

# A STRAIGHT ROAD TO CAESAR

Webre sho Ware

Wanie 1172

859



# THE LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

IN MEMORY OF
PROFESSOR WILLIAM MERRILL
AND
MRS. IMOGENE MERRILL

p.75===

Digitized by the Internet Archive in 2007 with funding from Microsoft Corporation .

# STRAIGHT ROAD TO CAESAR

## FOR BEGINNERS IN LATIN

BY

GEORGE W. WAITE, A.M. SUPERINTENDENT OBERLIN PUBLIC SCHOOLS

AND

GEORGE H. WHITE, A.M.
PRINCIPAL OBERLIN COLLEGE PREPARATORY SCHOOL

BOSTON, U.S.A.
GINN & COMPANY
1892

## GIFT

hunde

COPYRIGHT, 1891,

BY GEORGE W. WAITE AND GEORGE H. WHITE.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

TYPOGRAPHY BY J. S. CUSHING & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.

PRESSWORK BY GINN & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.

PA2087 W35 1892

То

OUR BRETHREN

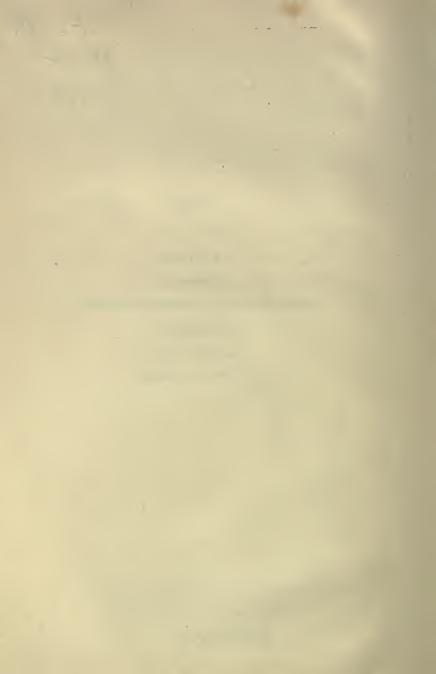
of the

NORTH-EASTERN OHIO TEACHERS ASSOCIATION

This Book is

with their consent

RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED



## PREFACE.

The aim of this book is indicated by the title. Caesar is properly the first Latin author read by American students, for no writer illustrates more clearly the spirit and principles of the language. A mastery of Caesar is the best possible foundation for Latin scholarship.

But Caesar is too difficult to be read freely and enthusiastically without definite preparation. The road to Caesar should be as direct and easy as a Roman road; it must, however, be long enough to carry the traveller not merely within sight of the city, but to the golden milestone in its very centre.

Our plan includes : -

- 1. An abundance of easy sentences, both English and Latin, for translation. The Latin is to be learned by constant and rapid translation, both Latin-English and English-Latin. The grammar-work is essential; but the grammar is quoted to explain the sentences, not the sentences to illustrate the grammar. The work begins with the sentence and is developed by sentences, so easy at first, and increasing in difficulty so gradually, that the hour of recitation is filled with the rapid practical use of the language.
- 2. The inductive method, used with moderation. The pupil first sees the Latin word in sentences, and, in the earlier part of the book, in all its case-forms; then, and not till then, he is called upon to learn the paradigm. The rules of syntax are developed in a similar way. There is thus, in every moment of study, the "joy of discovery," the "scientific method," laboratory practice. Words, as truly as rocks and flowers, are products of nature; and their right study should cultivate the observing faculties of the young as successfully, and in a very important direction.
- 3. The use of Caesar's vocabulary and of sentences taken from Caesar. In the choice of words for the earlier pages, we were obliged to take into account not only the frequency of their occurrence in Caesar, but as well, their availability for both paradigms and sentences. We can hardly expect that the amount of labor expended upon this portion of our book will be appreciated by any who have not attempted the

same thing. Our words are, with but two or three exceptions, Caesarian, and the sentences, as soon as the extent of the pupil's vocabulary allows, are largely taken from Caesar without essential change of form. We find, on concluding the work with classes, that the outline of thought in the First Book of Caesar, and a considerable portion of the difficult expressions, have become familiar to our pupils, so that their first days in Caesar are not, as has too often been the case, the most discouraging of their whole Latin course. And we regard it as of some importance that pupils should receive their first impressions of Latin not from such sentences as, *The rose is red*, but from Roman expressions like those of Caesar.

- 4. Systematic arrangement, and such constant repetition of all the previous work to the very end of the book, not through repeated references to the grammar, but through the construction of sentences, that term-reviews are not necessary, but that the pupil may constantly and safely move forward. Words are given so many times in the exercise where they first occur, and called up so regularly afterwards, that the pupil need never go to the lexicon for them a second time, and is able, thus, to give his full thought to the inflectional endings. And yet, toward the end, new words are freely introduced, that the pupil may have practice in the rapid acquisition of words. Equal care has been expended in arranging the principles of syntax; new rules are called up so regularly that they cannot pass out of mind.
- 5. Provision for the most thorough drill upon paradigms. No new method can secure substantial progress without such drill. All our paradigms are divided into syllables and accented, that there may be no possibility of mistake. It is hoped that the arrangements made for carrying the whole sentence through a paradigm may have some value.
- 6. Adequate means for teaching pronunciation correctly from the beginning. The first few days are all-important for this. We have not only given a key to the sounds and carried this as a foot-note for several pages, but have divided words into syllables and marked the accents for fifteen pages, and have throughout marked vowels known to be long.
- 7. The least possible use of the verb before the verb paradigms are given. Not many verbs are given at first, and these are used only in the third person of the present, imperfect, and future indicative. This is no burden to the pupil, yet it gives a good insight into the verb as Caesar employs it, and makes the study of the verb comparatively easy when it is reached.

- 8. Prominence to rules, not to exceptions. If rules are acquired, exceptions are noticed as exceptions when they occur, and this is sufficient in the early stages of language study.
- 9. Adequate emphasis upon the third declension of nouns, the pronouns, and the third conjugation of verbs.
- 10. No division into Lessons; the teacher being left free to divide the work according to his judgment.

Our reason for attempting to add another to the list of First Latin Books now before a long-suffering public, is that, after trying many books, we have not found among those in use one which exactly meets our needs. All with which we are acquainted demand a solid year of work, and do not enable the pupil even then to enter Caesar with comfort. We have found, by repeated trials, that good classes will accomplish this book and a large portion of the First Book of Caesar, in thirty-six weeks, each of five one-hour recitations. Many teachers—if many teachers do us the honor to use this book—will prefer to devote the whole thirty-six weeks to the mastery of the book alone. Others may think it wise to introduce the pupils to Caesar when they have reached Result Clauses, p. 144, and to take the remainder of this book in connection with the study of Cæsar. This we have sometimes done.

We desire to express our thanks to Miss Mary L. Atwood and Miss Frances J. Hosford, of the Oberlin College Preparatory School, and to Miss Grace Safford of the Oberlin Public High School, for their patient and appreciative use of our exercises, while we were experimenting with trial-editions.

OBERLIN, July, 1891.

#### TO THE PUPIL.

The Latin language is very different from the English. Observe attentively the following points:—

- 1. It is not enough in Latin to know words; it is equally important to know the endings of words. In the sentence, Puer (the boy) capit (captures) latronem (the robber), puer is the subject of the verb; but in Latro capit puerum, the word puerum is marked as the object by its suffix. To say Latro capit puer is no more correct than to say in English, Her don't want we; us don't belong to she.
- (See Gradātim, p. 19, published by Ginn & Co., Boston, 1889.) In English, the meaning depends upon the order of the words.

The boy captures the robber

means one thing;

The robber captures the boy

means quite another thing.

But in Latin,

Puer latronem capit, Puer capit latronem, Latronem puer capit, Latronem capit puer, Capit latronem puer,

all mean

The boy captures the robber.

On the other hand,

The robber captures the boy

may be expressed in Latin,

Latrō puerum capit, Latrō capit puerum, etc.

We have an illustration of this in the use of the English personal pronouns, e.g.

All men praise HIM,

and

HIM all men praise,

have the same meaning.

- 3. Many relations which in English are expressed by a preposition, are in Latin denoted by a change of ending in a noun, e.g. *The boat (scapha) of Sulla*, is, in Latin, *Scapha Sulla*. The correct use or omission of prepositions in Latin is highly important.
- 4. The verb in a Latin sentence usually stands last.

#### PROGRAM OF A RECITATION.

[Observe that the major part of the hour is assigned to translation, from Latin to English and from English to Latin.]

I.	Assignment of advance lesson, with advice as to method of learning	
II.	Rapid oral review of previous lesson 10 minutes.	
III.	Part of the class recite new paradigms, rules, etc.; part write paradigms on the board 10 minutes.	
IV.	Oral or blackboard translation of the advance from Latin to English	
v.	Part of the class write on the board the advance translation from English to Latin. The rest take drill work, — pronunciation, paradigms, translation from dictation. All unite in correcting blackboard work. 20 minutes.	
	55 minutes.	

The above plan provides for reciting each lesson twice: once in advance, once in review. This is sufficient. Another plan, which secures at least two recitations of each lesson, would devote the first half-hour to reciting the assigned lesson for the day and the review, and the second half-hour to going over the morrow's lesson; the teacher supplying the meanings of new words and making suggestions as to the best methods of study. This gives fine scope for the teacher's power, is in accordance with the modern methods of teaching, and will create enthusiasm; and, if the assigned lesson of each day is recited with thoroughness, the results will be satisfactory.

The only term-reviews necessary with this book are a few recitations upon the paradigms and rules of syntax. Words and constructions are so graded and repeated that there is no occasion for reviewing the sentences at the end of the term.

#### SUGGESTIONS.

- 1. That the pupil be required to pronounce each Latin and English sentence before translating.
- 2. That for the first ten recitations the teacher pronounce each Latin sentence before requiring the pupil to do so.
  - 3. That the class frequently read Latin in concert.
  - 4. That halting recitations be not allowed.
- 5. That the pupil be required often to translate both English and Latin sentences from the teacher's dictation.
- 6. That the endings and paradigms be learned at the places, and in the order, indicated.
- 7. That the teacher encourage the pupil to gather the thought in the Latin order of the words.
- 8. That the pupil be required to combine rapidity of recitation with thoroughness of work, and that the length of lessons bend to this.
- 9. That translation, both Latin-English and English-Latin, be made the chief work of the class-room.
- 10. That much written work, outside the class-room, be required; but that the pupil be not allowed, in the class-room, to lean upon his written work.
- 11. That the Suggestions which precede the Exercises be not committed to memory in place, but carefully read and applied in connection with the study of the Exercises.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PA	GE
Preface		V
To the Pupil	V	iii
Program of a Recitation		ix
Suggestions		x
Nouns in -a. Nominative and Accusative Cases, Singular Number.		1
Genitive, Dative, Vocative, and Ablative Cases, Singular Number .		2
Nominative and Accusative Cases, Plural Number		4
Other Cases, Plural Number		5
Recapitulation, Imperfect and Future Tenses		7
Nouns in -us. All Cases, Singular Number		8
Nouns in -us, Plural Number		9
Nouns in -er, -ir, and -ius. All Cases, Singular and Plural Num-		
bers		10
Nouns in -um. All Cases, Singular and Plural Numbers		12
The Change from the Active to the Passive Voice	,	15
Adjectives in -us, -a, -um, Singular Number. Passive Voice,		
Other Tenses		16
Adjectives in -us, -a, -um, Plural Number		17
Attributive and Predicate Adjectives		19
Genitive with Adjectives		20
Dative with Adjectives		21
Ablative with Adjectives		23
Adjectives in -er		24
Adjectives used as Nouns		26
Recapitulation, with New Nouns of the First Declension		27
Recapitulation, with New Nouns of the Second Declension		28
Nouns in -or, Masculine Gender, Singular Number		29
Nouns in -or, Plural Number		30
Nouns in -iō, Feminine Gender		31
Nouns in -ās, Feminine Gender		33
Nouns in -dō (geninis), Feminine Gender. Also homō and		
Caesar		34
Nouns in -ō (genōnis), Masculine Gender		36
xi		

and the second s			GE
Nouns in -1. Also frāter	•	•	37
Nouns in -es, Masculine Gender. Also princeps	•	•	38
Nouns in -ūs, Feminine Gender. Also laus and custos.		•	40
Nouns in -x, Feminine Gender		•	41
Nouns in -ēs. Also urbs and plēbs (i-stems). Feminine Ge			42
Nouns in -is (i-stems continued). Also cohors. Feminine	Gende	r	44
Nouns in -is (i-stems continued). Feminine Gender .			45
Nouns in -is (i-stems continued). Feminine Gender. Also	lige	r	
and Arar		•	46
Nouns in -e and -al (i-stems continued). Neuter Gender.		•	48
Adjectives in -is (i-stems), Third Declension, Two Termination			49
Adjectives in -is (i-stems continued), Two Terminations. A	lso th	e	
nouns genus and iter, Neuter Gender			50
Adjectives in -er (i-stems continued), Three Terminations			52
Recapitulation, with New Nouns of the Third Declension.			54
Recapitulation, with New Nouns, Proper Names			55
Bellum Helvētiōrum			56
The War with Ariovistus			57
Adjectives in -x, One Termination			58
Adjectives and Participles in -ns, One Termination			59
Adjectives with os-stems, Two Terminations. Comparatives			61
Comparative with quam, and with the Ablative			62
Comparatives (continued)			63
Superlatives			64
Irregular Comparison			66
Irregular and Defective Comparison			67
Irregular and Defective Comparison (continued)			68
Irregular and Defective Comparison (continued)			70
Comparison of Adverbs			71
Nouns of the Fourth Declension. Masculine Gender .			73
Nouns of the Fourth Declension (continued)			74
Nouns of the Fifth Declension. Feminine Gender			76
Demonstrative Pronouns. is, ea, id, Singular Number .			78
is, ea, id, Plural Number			79
hīc, haec, hōc			80
ille, illa, illud			81
is, hīc, and ille as Substantive Pronouns			83
ipse, iste, īdem			84
alius, nūllus, ūnus, alter			86
The Reflexive suī			88
The Relative qui, quae, quod, Singular Number			89
and atolastic qua, quae, quou, oringular itumber			00

quī, quae, quod, Plural Number	PAGI 9(
The Interrogatives, quis, and quī; ne, nonne, num	99
The Departure of the Helvetians	98
sum, I am, Present Indicative. The Personal Pronouns ego and tū.	36
01 1 0 1111	98
sum, Imperfect Indicative. Simple Conditions	97
sum, Future Indicative. Future Conditions	98
sum, Perfect Indicative. Simple Conditions	100
sum, Pluperfect Indicative	101
sum, Future Perfect Indicative. Future Conditions, More Vivid.	102
sum, Present Subjunctive. Future Conditions, Less Vivid	103
sum, Imperfect Subjunctive. Conditions Contrary to Fact, Pres-	100
ent Time	104
sum, Perfect Subjunctive. Future Conditions, Less Vivid	105
sum, Pluperfect Subjunctive. Conditions Contrary to Fact, Past	100
Time	106
Recapitulation of Conditional Sentences	107
Recapitulation (continued)	108
sum, Imperatives, Infinitives, Participle	109
First Conjugation, Active and Passive Voices. Indicative Mood,	100
70	111
First Conjugation, Active and Passive Voices. Indicative Mood,	111
T C + CD	118
First Conjugation, Active and Passive Voices. Indicative Mood,	116
Future Tense	118
First Conjugation, Active and Passive Voices. Indicative Mood,	110
Perfect Tense	116
First Conjugation, Active and Passive Voices. Indicative Mood,	110
Pluperfect Tense	118
First Conjugation, Active and Passive Voices. Indicative Mood,	110
Future Perfect Tense	119
First Conjugation, Active and Passive Voices. Subjunctive Mood,	110
Present Tense	121
First Conjugation, Active and Passive Voices. Subjunctive Mood,	121
*	122
Imperfect Tense	100
	128
Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses	125
	127
First Conjugation. Participles, Ablative Absolute	129
	131
First Conjugation. The Gerund	YOY

	PAGE
Second Conjugation, Active and Passive Voices. Indicative Mood.	
Tenses with Present Stem	132
Second Conjugation, Active and Passive Voices. Remaining Tenses	
of the Indicative Mood	135
Second Conjugation, Active and Passive Voices. Subjunctive	
Mood. Sequence of Tenses. Clauses of Pure Purpose	137
Purpose Clauses, Relative and Substantive. Abridged Conditions.	
Sequence of Tenses	140
Second Conjugation, Both Voices, Imperative and Infinitive	
Moods, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines	141
Result Clauses	144
Third Conjugation, Both Voices, Indicative Mood, Tenses with	
Present Stem:	145
Third Conjugation, Both Voices, Indicative Mood, Remaining	
Tenses	147
Third Conjugation, Both Voices, Subjunctive, Imperative, and In-	
finitive Moods, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines	149
Verbs in -iō, Third Conjugation	152
Fourth Conjugation, Both Voices, Indicative Mood	157
Fourth Conjugation, Remaining Moods and Forms	160
possum, volō, nōlō, mālō	163
Impersonal Verbs. Historical Infinitives	171
ferō, eō, fīō	173
Questions and Imperative Forms in Direct Discourse. Future	
Passive Infinitives	182
Periphrastic Conjugations	183
Vocabularies.	

## A STRAIGHT ROAD TO CAESAR.

#### NOUNS. FIRST OR A-DECLENSION.

# NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE CASES. SINGULAR NUMBER.

ILLUSTRATION. — Sul'la fē'mi nam lau'dat, Sulla praises the woman.

In the above sentence, Sul'la is in the nominative case, fē'mi nam in the accusative (English objective).

The sign of the nominative is the case-ending -a; of the accusative, the case-ending -am.

Suggestions.—1. The Latin has no article. Supply a, an, or the in English when necessary, as in the above illustration.

- 2. The words *long* and *short* when used of English vowels refer to *quality*; e.g.  $n\bar{o}te$ ,  $n\bar{o}te$ ,  $n\bar{o}t$ . When used of Latin vowels they refer to *quantity* only, a long syllable occupying more time in pronunciation than a short syllable, as indicated in the schedule below.
- 3. In this book, vowels long by nature are marked with the macron (\*). Diphthongs are long.

## 1.

1. Sul'la Gal'bam vo'cat. 2. Gal'ba Sul'lam vo'cat. 3. Fē'mi na fī'li am iu'vat. 4. Fī'li a fē'mi nam iu'vat. 5. Cot'ta sca'pham lau'dat. 6. Fē'mi na Mi ner'vam lau'dat. 7. Mi ner'va fī'li am lau'dat. 8. Gal'ba Sul'lam iu'vat. 9. Sul'la fē'mi nam iu'vat. 10. Cot'ta Mi ner'vam vo'cat. 11. Mi ner'va Cot'tam vo'cat. 12. Fī'li a Gal'bam lau'dat.

Note. - Pronounce the Latin according to the following schedule: -

DIRECTION. — Apply the following statements to the words in the above Exercise:—

- a. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.
- b. A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.
- c. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.

Commit these statements carefully to memory.

#### 2.

1. Minerva summons the woman. 2. Sulla summons the daughter. 3. The daughter assists Sulla. 4. Cotta assists Minerva. 5. Minerva praises the boat. 6. Galba praises the daughter. 7. Cotta summons Galba. 8. Sulla assists the daughter. 9. Minerva summons Sulla. 10. The woman assists Cotta. 11. The daughter praises the woman. 12. Galba praises Sulla.

# GENITIVE, DATIVE, VOCATIVE, AND ABLATIVE CASES. SINGULAR NUMBER.

ILLUSTRATIONS. — Sul'la sca'pham Gal'bae (genitive case) lau'dat, Sulla praises the boat of Galba, or, Sulla praises Galba's boat.

Sul'la Gal'bae (dative case) sca'pham dat, Sulla gives the boat to Galba, or, Sulla gives Galba the boat.

Sul'la, Gal'ba (vocative case), sca'pham lau'dat, (O) Galba, Sulla praises the boat.

Sul'la Gal'bam sca'phā (ablative case) iu'vat, Sulla assists Galba with a boat.

Fē'mi na, fī'li a (apposition) Gal'bae, Cot'tam iu'vat, A woman, the daughter of Galba, assists Cotta.

The Latin case-endings given above, and their equivalents, are —

 $<sup>\</sup>check{a}$ ,  $\bar{a}$ , păpā;  $\check{o}$ ,  $\bar{o}$ ,  $\check{o}$ hō;  $\check{u}$ ,  $\bar{u}$ , fǎll m $\bar{o}$ on;  $\check{e}$ ,  $\bar{e}$ , văc $\bar{a}$ tion;  $\bar{\imath}$ , machine;  $\check{\imath}$ , holžness; a, ay; a, boy; au, now; eu, feud; ei, veil; ui, we.

LATIN.		ENGLISH.
Genitive,	-ae,	Objective with of, or the possessive case,
Dative,	-ae,	Objective with to (or for),
Vocative,	-a,	Nominative of address,
Ablative,	-ā,	Objective with by, from, with, in, etc.

Suggestions.—1. Cum (in 8 below) is a preposition governing the ablative.

2. The vocative generally stands after one or more words in its sentence (as in 5 below).

3.

1. Mi ner'va sca'pham Cot'tae lau'dat. 2. Cot'ta Mi ner'vae sca'pham dat. 3. Gal'ba ga'le am Sul'lae lau'dat. 4. Sul'la Gal'bae ga'le am dat. 5. Sul'la, Cot'ta (vocative), fī'li am Gal'bae vo'cat. 6. Fī'li a Gal'bae Mi ner'vam vo'cat. 7. Sul'la cum fē'mi nā Mi ner'vam iu'vat. 8. Fī'li a Gal'bae cum Mi ner'vā Sul'lam iu'vat. 9. Sul'la fī'li am Gal'bae sca'phā iu'vat. 10. Fē'mi na, fī'li a Sul'lae, Gal'bam pe cū'ni ā iu'vat. 11. Gal'ba cum fī'li ā Sul'lae Mi ner'vam lau'dat. 12. Mi ner'va fē'mi nae pe cū'ni am et sca'pham dat.

Learn and repeat the following paradigms, and all given hereafter, till they are as familiar as the alphabet:—

	BOAT (F.)	MINERVA (F.)	WOMAN (F.)	HELMET (F.)
Sing. Nom.	sca'pha	Mi ner'va	fē'mi na	ga/le a
Gen.	sca'phae	Mi ner'vae	fē'mi n <b>ae</b>	ga'le ae
Dat.	sca'phae	Mi ner'vae	fē'mi n <b>ae</b>	ga'le <b>ae</b>
Acc.	sca'pham	Mi ner'vam	fē'mi nam	ga'le am
Voc.	sca'pha	Mi ner'va	fē'mi na	ga'le a
Abl.	sca'phā	Mi ner'vā	fē'mi n <b>ā</b>	$ga'le \bar{a}$

Like sca'pha, decline Cot'ta, Gal'ba, and Sul'la; like ga'lea, fi'lia and  $pec\bar{u}'nia$ .

Directions.—1. Use, occasionally, the progressive form of the verb, e.g. is praising for praises.

c, come; g, go; i consonant, yes; s, yes; t, time; v (u consonant), we; qu, quart; ch, king; th, thick; ph, fun; bs, like ps.

- 2. Apply and learn the following statements: -
- a. Any noun which modifies another noun and does not denote the same person or thing, is in the genitive.
  - b. The indirect object of an action is in the dative.
  - c. The vocative is used for direct address.
- d. The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative.
- e. A noun which modifies another noun and denotes the same person or thing, agrees with it in case. This agreement is called apposition.

#### 4.

1. Sulla summons Galba's daughter. 2. Galba, with [his] daughter, is assisting Sulla. 3. Sulla praises Minerva's daughter.
4. Minerva gives Galba the boat. 5. Galba is giving a boat to Sulla's daughter. 6. Galba summons the woman's daughter.
7. The woman, with [her] daughter, is assisting Galba. 8. The daughter of Galba gives money to Minerva. 9. Galba is giving Sulla a helmet. 10. Sulla assists Galba with money and a boat.
11. Minerva, with the daughter of Galba, assists Sulla. 12. The woman, daughter of Galba, gives a boat to Sulla.

# NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE CASES. PLURAL NUMBER.

Suggestions. — 1. Nominative case-ending, -ae; accusative, -ās.

2. The personal ending -t of the verb in the singular number becomes -nt in the plural.

#### 5.

- 1. Sul'la fī'li ās Gal'bae vo'cat. 2. Fī'li ae Sul'lae (dative) pe cū'ni am dant. 3. Gal'ba cum Mi ner'vā fē'mi nās iu'vat.
- 4. Fē'mi na, cum fī'li ā Cot'tae, Mi ner'vae ga'le ās dē mon'strat.
- 5. Fī'li ae Gal'bae fē'mi nās vo'cant. 6. Fē'mi nae fī'li ās Gal'bae

ă, ā, păpā; ŏ, ō, ŏhō; ŭ, ū, fùll moon; ĕ, ē, văcātion; ī, machīne; ĭ, holĭness; æ, ay; æ, boy; au, now; eu, feud; ei, veil; ui, we.

iu'vant. 7. Mi ner'va et Cot'ta ga'le ās Sul'lae lau'dant. 8. Fē'mi nae Sul'lae (dative) sca'phās Gal'bae dē mōn'strant. 9. Fī'li ae Sul'lae Mi ner'vae (dative) ga'le ās dant. 10. Sul'la et Mi ner'va fī'li ās Cot'tae pe cū'ni ā iu'vant.

6.

1. The woman praises Sulla's helmets. 2. The women, daughters of Sulla, praise Galba's boats. 3. Sulla is showing [his] helmets and boats to Minerva. 4. Minerva assists the women, daughters of Galba, with money. 5. The women summon the daughters of Cotta. 6. Galba's daughters are assisting Sulla with a boat. 7. The women give the daughter of Galba money and boats. 8. Galba gives helmets and boats to Sulla. 9. The woman, daughter of Galba, assists Sulla. 10. The daughters of Galba and of Sulla are showing Minerva the boats.

#### OTHER CASES, PLURAL NUMBER.

Suggestion. — Genitive case-ending, -ārum; dative, -īs; vocative, -ae; ablative, -īs. The dative and ablative plural of fī'lia is fī liā'bus.

## 7.

1. Per'fu ga cum nau'tīs est in Ger mā'ni ā. 2. Gal'ba per'fu-gīs pe cū'ni am dat. 3. Nau'ta per'fu gam sca'phīs iu'vat. 4. Fē'-mi nae cum fīli ā'bus Sul'lam iu'vant. 5. Mi ner'va fīli ā'bus Gal'bae ga'le ās dat. 6. Gal'ba fē'mi nīs sca'phās per fu gā'rum dē mōn'strat. 7. Nau'tae cum per'fu gīs sunt in Ger mā'ni ā. 8. Fī'li ae per'fu gae sunt in Ī ta'li ā, et nau'tīs pe cū'ni am dant. 9. Pe cū'ni a fīli ā'rum est in sca'phā. 10. Fē'mi nae sunt in sca'phīs et fī'li ās iu'vant. 11. Ga'le ae per fu gā'rum et sca'-phae nau tā'rum in Gal'li ā sunt. 12. Fē'mi nae et nau'tae et per'fu gae sunt in sca'phīs.

c, come; g, go; i consonant, yes; s, yes; t, time; v (u consonant) we; qu, quart; ch, king; th, thick; ph, fun; bs, like ps.

DIRECTION. — Apply and learn the following statement: —

Most nouns of the first declension are feminine; but, in all declensions, names of male beings, and of rivers, winds, months, and mountains, are masculine; and names of female beings, and of countries, cities, plants, and trees, are feminine.

	BOATS (F.)	WOMEN (F.)	HELMETS (F.)
Plur. Nom.	sca'phae	fē'mi n <b>ae</b>	ga'le ae
Gen.	sca ph <b>ā'rum</b>	fē mi n <b>ā'rum</b>	ga le ā'rum
Dat.	sca'phīs	fē'mi n <b>īs</b>	ga'le <b>īs</b>
Acc.	sca'ph <b>ās</b>	fē'mi n <b>ās</b>	ga'le ās
Voc.	sca'phae	fē'mi nae	ga'le <b>ae</b>
Abl.	sca'phīs	fē'mi n <b>īs</b>	ga'le <b>īs</b>

Combine these paradigms with the corresponding singulars (Exercise 3) and commit all thoroughly to memory. Like sca'pha decline nau'ta; like  $f\bar{e}'mina$ , per'fuga; like ga'lea,  $pec\bar{u}'nia$  and (in the singular) Gal'lia,  $Germ\bar{a}'nia$  and  $\bar{I}ta'lia$ .  $F\bar{\imath}'lia$  is declined like ga'lea, but has  $f\bar{\imath}li\bar{a}'bus$  (not  $f\bar{\imath}'li\bar{\imath}s$ ) in the dative and ablative plural.

8.

1. Galba's daughter is in the boat with the women. 2. Galba is in Italy and is assisting the deserters with boats. 3. Sulla gives the deserters money. 4. The woman is in Germany with the daughters of Sulla. 5. Minerva summons the sailor's daughters. 6. The sailors' daughters assist Galba with money. 7. Galba gives Sulla's daughters a boat. 8. The deserters are showing helmets to the women. 9. Minerva assists the women with boats. 10. The money of the daughters is in the boats. 11. Galba gives helmets to the deserters. 12. The sailors' money is in the helmet, the helmet in the boat.

 $<sup>\</sup>ddot{a}$ ,  $\bar{a}$ , păpā;  $\ddot{o}$ ,  $\bar{o}$ ,  $\ddot{o}$ hō;  $\ddot{u}$ ,  $\bar{u}$ , fŭll m $\bar{oo}$ n;  $\ddot{e}$ ,  $\ddot{e}$ , văoātion;  $\ddot{\imath}$ , machīne;  $\ddot{\imath}$ , holĭness;  $\dot{w}$ ,  $\dot{u}$ ,  $\dot{v}$ , boy;  $\dot{u}$ , now;  $\dot{e}$ , feud;  $\dot{e}$ , veil;  $\dot{u}$ ,  $\dot{v}$ .

#### RECAPITULATION, IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

Suggestions.—1. The imperfect tense has -ba before the personal endings -t and -nt; e.g.  $lau \, d\bar{a}'bat$ , he was praising;  $lau \, d\bar{a}'bant$ , they were praising.

- 2. The future tense has -bi (singular), -bu (plural) before the endings -t and -nt; e.g.  $lau\,d\bar{a}'bit$ ,  $he\,will\,praise$ ;  $lau\,d\bar{a}'bunt$ ,  $they\,will\,praise$ . When the letter before -ba or -bi is  $\bar{a}$  (or a before the personal endings, e.g. lau'-dat, lau'dant), the verb is said to be of the first conjugation. A is generally long before -ba, -bi, -bu; but is short in da'bat, da'bit, etc.
- 3. The imperfects e'rat, he was, e'rant, they were; and the futures e'rit, he will be, e'runt, they will be; are irregularly formed.

9.

1. Fē'mi na e'rat fī'li a Cot'tae. 2. Sul'la nau'ta (appositive) e'rit in sca'phā. 3. Fī'li a Cot'tae (dative) sca'pham Gal'bae per'fu gae dē mōn strā'bit. 4. Per'fu ga Sul'lam nau'tam vo cā'bat. 5. Cot'ta Gal'bam iu vā'bit et per'fu gae (dative) pe cū'ni am Sul'lae da'bit. 6. Gal'ba per'fu ga sca'pham Sul'lae et ga'le am Cot'tae lau dā'bat. 7. Fē'mi nae e'rant fī'li ae nau tā'rum. 8. Nau'tae fī li ā'bus pe cū'ni am et sca'phās da'bant. 9. Fi'li ae cum nau'tīs e'runt in sca'phīs. 10. Per'fu gae, Cot'ta et Gal'ba (appositives), sca'phās fī li ā'rum lau dā'bant. 11. Nau'tae cum fī li ā'bus Cot'tam et Gal'bam per'fu gās iu vā'bant. 12. Fī'li ae per'fu gīs pe cū'ni am et ga'le ās da'bunt. 13. Pe cū'ni a fī li ā'rum e'rat in ga'le īs, ga'le ae in sca'phīs. 14. Fī'li ae per fu gā'rum fī'li ās nau tā'rum iu vā'bunt.

#### 10.

1. The deserter was in Gaul with Sulla. 2. The sailor will give money to the daughter of Sulla. 3. The women will assist the deserters with Sulla's boat. 4. Cotta's daughter will show Sulla's boat to a deserter. 5. Galba, the deserter, is giving money to the sailor's daughters. 6. The sailors were in the boat with the deserters. 7. The sailors were assisting the deserters.

c, come; g, go; i consonant, yes; s, yes; t, time; v (u consonant) we; qu, quart; ch, king; th, thick; ph, fun; bs, like ps.

8. The deserters were praising the sailors. 9. The money of Galba, the deserter, was in a sailor's helmet. 10. The boats of the sailors and the money of the deserters were in Italy.

## 

#### NOUNS. SECOND OR O-DECLENSION.

#### NOUNS IN -US. ALL CASES, SINGULAR NUMBER.

Suggestions.—1. Nominative case-ending, -us; genitive,  $-\overline{\imath}$ ; dative,  $-\overline{o}$ ; accusative, -um; vocative, -e; ablative,  $-\overline{o}$ .

- 2. Notice that here alone the vocative of Latin nouns differs from the nominative.
- 3. Nouns of the second declension in -us are, as a rule, masculine. But, in all declensions, apply first the Direction in Exercise 7.

#### 11.

1. Brū'tus do'mi nī et ser'vī a mī'cus e'rat. 2. Do'mi nus e'rat cap tī'vī a mī'cus. 3. Do'mi nus ser'vum a mī'cī lau dā'bit. 4. Captī'vus, a mī'ce, do'mi nō e'quum da'bat. 5. Do'mi nus ser'vō e'quum da'bit. 6. Do'mi nus e'quī e'rat cap tī'vus. 7. Cap tī'vus et e'quus e'rant in Gal'li ā. 8. Do'mi nus cum cap tī'vō et ser'vō e'rit in Ger mā'ni ā. 9. Ser'vus cum do'mi nō et a mī'cō, Brū'tō, cap tī'vum iu vā'bat. 10. Ser'vus do'mi num vo cā'bit. 11. Ser'vus, Brū'te, e'rit a mī'cus.

		SLAVE (M.)	CAPTIVE (M.)	MASTER (M.)
Sing.	Nom.	ser'vus	cap tī'v <b>us</b>	do'mi n <b>us</b>
	Gen.	ser'vī	cap tī'vī	do'mi n <b>ī</b>
	Dat.	ser'vō	cap tī'v <b>ō</b>	do'mi n <b>ō</b>
	Acc.	ser'vum	cap tī'v <b>um</b>	do'mi n <b>um</b>
	Voc.	ser've	cap tī'v <b>e</b>	do'mi n <b>e</b>
	Abl.	ser'vō	cap tī'v <b>ō</b>	do'mi n <b>ō</b>

Like ser'vus decline  $Br\bar{u}'tus$  and e'quus; like  $cap\ t\bar{\iota}'vus$ ,  $a\ m\bar{\iota}'cus$ .

 $<sup>\</sup>check{a}$ ,  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\check{p}\check{a}\check{p}\check{a}$ ;  $\check{o}$ ,  $\bar{o}$ ,  $\check{o}h\bar{o}$ ;  $\check{u}$ ,  $\bar{u}$ ,  $f\check{u}ll$   $m\bar{o}\bar{o}n$ ;  $\check{e}$ ,  $\bar{e}$ ,  $v\check{a}c\bar{a}tion$ ;  $\bar{\imath}$ , machīne;  $\check{\imath}$ , holžness; a, ay; a, boy; au, now; eu, feud; ei, veil; ui, we.

#### 12.

1. Slave, [your] master is in Germany with Brutus. 2. The owner of the horse was a friend of Brutus. 3. Brutus gives the captive money and a horse. 4. The captive, in company with [his] friend, was assisting Brutus. 5. The slave is assisting [his] master with a horse and a boat. 6. Brutus, [your] friend is a captive. 7. The slave was praising Brutus, [his] master. 8. The captive is giving a slave to [his] friend Brutus. 9. Brutus was summoning the captive. 10. The friend of Brutus was a captive. 11. Brutus will summon the slave and give money to the captive. 12. The master is praising the captive.

#### NOUNS IN -US, PLURAL NUMBER.

Suggestion. — Nominative and vocative case-ending, -ī; genitive, -ōrum; dative, -īs; accusative, -ōs; ablative, -īs.

#### 13.

1. Ser'vī e'rant do mi nō'rum a mī'cī. 2. Do'mi nī sunt ser vō'rum a mī'cī. 3. Prae fec'tī a mī'cōs vo cā'bant. 4. Tri bū'nī sunt prae fec tō'rum a mī'cī. 5. Tri bū'nī prae fec'tīs e'quōs da'bunt, ser'vīs nōn. 6. Prae fec'tī do'mi nīs e'quōs dē mōn strā'bant. 7. Prae fec'tī e'rant cap tī'vī. 8. Tri bū'nī prae fec'tōs et do'minōs vo cā'bunt, ser'vōs nōn. 9. Ser'vī tri bū'nōs nōn lau dā'bunt. 10. Do'mi nī et ser'vī cum tri bū'nīs et prae fec'tīs e'rant in Ī ta'li ā. 11. A mī'cī tri bū nō'rum cap tī vō'rum a mī'cī sunt. 12. Do'mi nī cap tī'vīs et a mī'cīs cap tī vō'rum pe cū'ni am dē mōnstrā'bunt. 13. Tri bū'nī cap tī'vōs e'quīs iu'vant. 14. Tri bū'nī cum do'mi nīs et ser'vīs et cap tī'vīs e'rant in Ger mā'ni ā.

:	SLAVES (M.)	CAPTIVES (M.)	MASTERS (M.)
Plur. Nom.	ser'vī	cap tī'vī	do'mi nī
Gen.	ser v <b>ō'rum</b>	cap tī v <b>ō'rum</b>	do mi n <b>ō'rum</b>
Dat.	ser'vīs	cap tī'v <b>īs</b>	do'mi n <b>īs</b>

c, come; g, go; i consonant, yes; s, yes; t, time; v (u consonant), we; qu, quart; ch, king; th, thick; ph, fun; bs, like ps.

	SLAVES (M.)	CAPTIVES (M.)	MASTERS (M.)
Plur. Acc.	ser'v <b>ōs</b>	cap tī'v <b>ōs</b>	do'mi n <b>ōs</b>
Voc.	ser'vī	cap tī'vī	do'mi n <b>ī</b>
Abl.	ser'v <b>īs</b>	cap tī'v <b>īs</b>	do'mi n <b>īs</b>

Combine these paradigms with those of Exercise 11; complete the paradigms of e'quus and  $a\,m\bar{\iota}'cus$ ; decline also like  $cap\,t\bar{\iota}'vus$ ,  $tri\,b\bar{\iota}'nus$  and praefec'tus.

#### 14.

1. The friends of the captives were not slaves. 2. The friends of the slaves were not captives. 3. The captives are friends of the commanders. 4. The tribunes were summoning the slaves and [their] friends. 5. The tribunes will give horses to the slaves and [their] friends. 6. The slaves summon [their] masters, and with [their] friends assist the tribunes. 7. The commanders are friends of the masters and the tribunes. 8. The masters were giving money to the captives. 9. The masters with their slaves will assist the commanders. 10. The masters with the commanders and tribunes were assisting the captives. 11. The captives were giving [their] horses to the masters, not to the commanders. 12. The commanders are with the masters and captives.

# NOUNS IN -ER, -IR, AND -IUS. ALL CASES, SINGULAR AND PLURAL NUMBERS.

Suggestions. — 1. Nouns in -er and -ir have no case-ending in the nom. and voc. sing. In the other cases, the endings are like those of nouns in -us.

- 2. In some of these nouns, e.g. a'ger, e of the nom. and voc. sing. is not found in the other cases; thus, the gen. sing. is  $a'gr\bar{\imath}$ , not  $a'ger\bar{\imath}$ .
- 3. Nouns in -ius usually have - $\bar{i}$  instead of -i $\bar{i}$  in the genitive singular, e.g.  $Clau'd\bar{i}$  and  $so'c\bar{i}$  (3 and 18 below), and in the vocative singular of proper names (also  $f\bar{i}'l\bar{i}$  us), - $\bar{i}$  instead of -ie, e.g.  $Clau'd\bar{i}$  and  $f\bar{i}'l\bar{i}$  (17 and 18).

 $<sup>\</sup>ddot{a}$ ,  $\ddot{a}$ , pǎp $\ddot{a}$ ;  $\ddot{o}$ ,  $\ddot{o}$ ,  $\ddot{o}$ h $\ddot{o}$ ;  $\ddot{u}$ ,  $\ddot{u}$ , fǎll m $\ddot{o}$ on;  $\ddot{e}$ ,  $\ddot{e}$ , vǎc $\ddot{a}$ tion;  $\ddot{i}$ , mach $\ddot{i}$ ne;  $\ddot{i}$ , hol $\ddot{i}$ ness;  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha y$ ;  $\alpha$ , boy;  $\alpha u$ , now; e u, feud; e i, veil; u i, v e.

#### 15.

1. Fa'ber pu'e rum con fir'mat. 2. Pu'er cum fa'brō est in a'grō. 3. Vir fī'li ōs Clau'dī (-iī) ser'vat. 4. Tri bū'nus pu'e rō pecū'ni am da'bat. 5. Ser'vī in a'grīs e'rant cum pu'e rīs. 6. Pu'e rī, fī'li ī fa brō'rum, fī'li ās tri bū'nī iu vā'bunt. 7. Fa'brī sunt a mī'cī pu e rō'rum. 8. Do'mi nus vi'rīs et fē'mi nīs et lī'be rīs pe cū'ni am dat. 9. Vi'rī pu'e rōs cōn fir'mant. 10. Sul'la fa'brīs et so'ci īs a'grōs dat. 11. So'ci ī fī'li um Clau'dī (-iī) cōn fir mā'bant. 12. Fī'li us fa'brī a mī'eus pu'e rī est. 13. Ser'vī fa'brōs et so'ci ōs ser'vant. 14. Sul'la fa'brō a'grum, pu'e rīs e'quum dē mōn strā'bit. 15. Lī'be rī cum vi'rīs sunt in sca'phā. 16. Fa'ber fē'mi nās iu vā'bit, vi'rōs et lī'be rōs, nōn. 17. Fa'ber, Clau'dī, vi'rō ser'vum dē mōn strā'bat. 18. Brū'tus, fī'lī, est so'ci us, Clau'di us a mī'cus so'cī (-iī).

	FII	ELD (M.)	воч (м.)	ALLY (M.)	CLAUDIUS (M.)
Sing. No	om.	a'ger	pu'er	so'ci us	Clau'di us
Ge	en.	a'grī	pu'e rī	so'cī (-iī)	Clau'dī (-iī)
Da	at.	a'gr <b>ō</b>	pu'e r <b>ō</b>	so'ci ō	Clau'di ō
Ac	ec.	a'grum	pu'e r <b>um</b>	so'ci um	Clau'di <b>um</b>
Vo	oc.	a'ger	pu'er	so'ci e	Clau'dī
Al	ol.	a'gr <b>ō</b>	pu'e rō	so'ci ō	Clau'di ō
		•			Sing. MAN (M.)
Plur. No	m.	a'grī	pu'e rī	so'ciī	vir
Ge	en.	a'gr <b>ō'rum</b>	pu e r <b>ō'run</b>	n so ci <b>ō'rum</b>	vi'rī
Da	at.	a'gr <b>īs</b>	pu'e r <b>īs</b>	so'ci īs	vi'rō
Ac	c.	a'gr <b>ōs</b>	pu'e r <b>ōs</b>	so'ci ōs	vi′r <b>um</b>
Vo	c.	a'gr <b>ī</b>	pu'e r	so'ciī	vir
Alt	ol.	a'gr <b>īs</b>	pu'e r <b>īs</b>	so'ci īs	vi'r <b>ō</b>

Like a'ger decline fa'ber; like pu'er,  $l\bar{\imath}'ber\bar{\imath}$  (used only in the plural); like Clau'dius and the plural of so'cius decline  $f\bar{\imath}'lius$ . Complete vir as follows: Plur. nom.  $vi'r\bar{\imath}$ , gen.  $vir\bar{o}'-rum$ , dat.  $vi'r\bar{\imath}s$ , etc.

c, come; g, go; i consonant, yes; s, yes; t, time; v (u consonant) we; qu, quart; ch, king; th, thick; ph, fun; bs, like ps.

#### 16.

1. The boys are in the field with the engineers. 2. The engineers are encouraging the boys. 3. The men are protecting the commanders. 4. The engineer was a friend of the boys. 5. The boys were sons of engineers. 6. The commanders will give the boys boats, the men horses. 7. A man will be with the boys in the boat. 8. The boys will be with the men in the boats. 9. The slave of the man Claudius (appositive) was not the boy's friend. 10. Claudius, Sulla is giving fields to slaves and deserters. 11. Boys, the engineers were allies, not slaves. 12. To the man, Claudius (appositive), the engineer gives money. 13. To the boy, the son of Brutus, Claudius was showing [his] helmet. 14. The men are protecting the allies.

# NOUNS IN -UM. ALL CASES, SINGULAR AND PLURAL NUMBERS.

Suggestions.—1. The case-ending of the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular is -um; that of the nom., acc., and voc. plural, -a. Other case-endings are as in nouns in -us; but nouns in -i um usually have -ī instead of -iī in the gen. sing.

- 2. Nouns of the second declension in -um are neuter. But apply directions (Exercise 7). The neuter *vul'gus* has no plural, and its case-ending in nom., acc., and voc. is -us.
- 3. Est at the beginning of a sentence is to be translated there is; sunt, there are; e'rat, there was, etc.
- 4. Auxi'li um (singular) means assistance; auxi'li a (plural), auxiliary forces, auxiliaries.

#### 17.

1. Con ci'li um de cre'tum pa'rat. 2. Vul'gus prae fec'to de cre'tum de mon strā'bit. 3. Con ci'li  $\alpha$  de cre'ta, prae fec'to op'pi da, pa'rant. 4. Au xi'li  $\alpha$  de cre'ta con ci li  $\bar{o}$ 'rum lau dā'bant. 5. Au-

 $<sup>\</sup>ddot{a}$ ,  $\ddot{a}$ , p $\ddot{a}$ p $\ddot{a}$ ;  $\ddot{o}$ ,  $\ddot{o}$ ,  $\ddot{o}$ h $\ddot{o}$ ;  $\ddot{u}$ ,  $\ddot{u}$ , f $\ddot{u}$ ll m $\ddot{o}$ on;  $\ddot{e}$ ,  $\ddot{e}$ , v $\ddot{a}$ c $\ddot{a}$ tion;  $\ddot{i}$ , mach $\ddot{i}$ ne;  $\ddot{i}$ , holiness;  $\ddot{a}$ , ay;  $\ddot{a}$ , by; au, now; eu, feud; ei, veil; ui, we.

xi'li um con ci'lī prae si'di a con fir'mat. 6. Con ci'li um op'pi dō et prae si'di ō au xi'li um da'bit. 7. E'quī au xi li ō'rum e'rant in ca'strīs. 8. Ca'stra et op'pi da et prae si'di a sunt in pe rī'cu lō. 9. Op'pi dum est in pe rī'cu lō et prae fec'tus bel'lum pa rā'bit. 10. A mī'cī ser vō'rum con ci'li ō pe rī'cu lum dē mōn strā'bant. 11. Tri bū'nus au xi'li a ar'mat. 12. Est bel'lum et prae fec'tī ca strō'rum so'ci ōs ar'mant. 13. Prae si'di um cum au xi'li īs est in op'pi dō. 14. Bel'la et pe rī'cu la bel lō'rum vul'gus nōn cōn-fir mā'bunt.

	WAR (N.)	DECREE (N.)	TOWN (N.)	COUNCIL (N.)
Sing. Nom.	bel'lum	dē crē't <b>um</b>	op'pi d <b>um</b>	con ci'li <b>um</b>
Gen.	bel'lī	dē crē't <b>ī</b>	op′pi d <b>ī</b>	con ci'l <b>ī</b> (-i <b>ī</b> )
Dat.	bel'lō	dē crē't <b>ō</b>	op'pi d <b>ō</b>	con ci'li ō
Acc.	bel'l <b>um</b>	dē crē't <b>um</b>	op'pi d <b>um</b>	con ci'li <b>um</b>
Voc.	bel'l <b>um</b>	dē crē't <b>um</b>	op'pi d <b>um</b>	con ci'li <b>um</b>
Abl.	bel'l <b>ō</b>	dē crē't <b>ō</b>	op'pi d <b>ō</b>	con ci'li ō
Plur. Nom.	bel'la	dē crē't <b>a</b>	op'pi d <b>a</b>	con ci'li a
Gen.	bel l <b>ō'rum</b>	dē crē t <b>ō'rum</b>	op'pid <b>ō'rum</b>	con ci li ō 'rum
Dat.	bel'l <b>īs</b>	dē crē't <b>īs</b>	op'pi d <b>īs</b>	con ci'li <b>īs</b>
Acc.	bel'la	dē crē'ta	op'pi d <b>a</b>	con ci'li a
Voc.	bel'la	dē crē't <b>a</b>	op'pi d <b>a</b>	con ci'li a
Abl.	bel'l <b>īs</b>	dē crē't <b>īs</b>	op'pi d <b>īs</b>	con ci'li <b>īs</b>

Like the sing. of bel'lum decline vul'gus, but see Suggestion 2, above; like the plur. of bel'lum, ca'stra; like op'-pi dum, pe rī'cu lum; like con ci'li um, au xi'li um and praesi'di um.

#### 18.

1. The council is arming the auxiliary [forces]. 2. The auxiliary [forces] will be in camp. 3. Claudius with the auxiliaries protects the camp. 4. Italy is in danger, the slaves are preparing war. 5. There is war, the women and children are in the town. 6. The tribunes will protect the council of the common people. 7. The common people with the tribune protect the

c, come; g, go; i consonant, yes; s, yes; t, time; v (u consonant) we; qu, quart; ch, king; th, thick; ph, fun; bs, like ps.

town. 8. The garrison of the town will assist the common people. 9. The commanders arm the auxiliaries and the allies. 10. Garrisons of auxiliary [forces] protect the towns. 11. The commander of the camp gives the town assistance. 12. The commanders of the garrison are in the camp.

#### LETTERS.

A, e, i, o, u, y, are vowels; all other letters are consonants. The combinations ae, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ui, are diphthongs. P, b, c(k), q, g, t, d, ch, th, are mutes; l, m, n, r, liquids; x and z double consonants. I is a consonant before another vowel in the same syllable.

#### SYLLABICATION.

- 1. Make the syllables of a Latin word the same in number as its vowels and diphthongs; e.g. nau'ta,  $a m \bar{\imath}' cus$ .
- 2. Write a single consonant, or x, or two or more consonants which can be used to begin a word, with the latter of two vowels; e.g. do'minus, auxi'lium, sca'pha, ca'stra.
- 3. Of other two consonants, write one with each vowel; of more than two, join with the latter vowel those which can be used to begin a word; e.g. Sul'la,  $d\bar{e}$   $m\bar{o}n'strat$ .

#### QUANTITY OF VOWELS AND SYLLABLES.

- 1. For quantity of vowels, see Exercise 1, Suggestions 2 and 3.
- 2. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is a long syllable; e.g.  $n\bar{o}n$ , nau'ta (first syllable).
- 3. A syllable containing a short vowel is a long syllable when its vowel is followed by two or more consonants or a double consonant, but when the first of two consonants is a mute and the second a liquid, the syllable is common, that is, short in prose, but sometimes long in poetry; e.g. Cot'ta, a'grī (first syllables).

 $<sup>\</sup>ddot{a}$ ,  $\ddot{a}$ , păp $\ddot{a}$ ;  $\ddot{o}$ ,  $\ddot{o}$ ,  $\ddot{o}$ h $\ddot{o}$ ;  $\ddot{u}$ ,  $\ddot{u}$ , f $\ddot{u}$ ll m $\ddot{o}$ on;  $\ddot{e}$ ,  $\ddot{e}$ , văc $\ddot{a}$ tion;  $\ddot{\imath}$ , machine;  $\ddot{\imath}$ , holiness;  $\alpha$ , ay;  $\alpha$ , boy; au, now; eu, feud; ei, veil; ui, ve.

## 4. Name syllables as indicated by the following word: —

5 4 3 2 1 Pe cū ni ā' rum.

1. Ultima.

2. Penult.

3. Antepenult.

4. First syllable preceding the antepenult, etc.

#### ACCENT.

- 1. Accent the penult of a word of two syllables; e.g. Gal'ba.
- 2. Accent the penult of a word of three or more syllables, if the penult be a long syllable; otherwise, accent the antepenult; e.g. a mī'cus, prae fec'tus; fē'mi na, do'mi nus.

Verify these rules by the preceding Exercises, and apply them hereafter till mastered.

# THE CHANGE FROM THE ACTIVE TO THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Suggestions. —1. The subject (nominative) of the Active Voice, if a voluntary agent, is put in the ablative with  $\bar{a}$  or ab in the Passive; e.g. Brūtus in 1 becomes  $\bar{a}$  Brūt $\bar{o}$  in 2.

- 2. The object (accusative) of the Active Voice becomes the subject (nominative) of the Passive; e.g. auxilia and sociōs (accs.) in 9 become auxilia and sociī in 10.
- 3. The personal endings -t and -nt of the Active Voice become respectively -tur and -ntur in the Passive; e.g. vo'cat, he summons; vo ca'tur, he is summoned; vo'cant, they summon; vo can'tur, they are summoned.
- 4. In translation, such forms as they are summoned (Passive Voice) should be carefully distinguished from they are summoning (Progressive Form, Active Voice).

#### 19.

Brūtus līberōs sociōrum vocat et cōnfirmat.
 Līberī sociōrum ā Brūtō vocantur et cōnfirmantur.
 Tribūnī servum iuvant.
 Servus ā tribūnīs iuvātur.
 Fīliae fabrī līberōs captīvōrum laudant et iuvant.
 Līberī captīvōrum ā fīliābus fabrī laudantur et iuvantur.
 Auxilia castra et oppida servant.
 Castra et oppida ab auxiliīs servantur.
 Praefectī auxilia

et sociōs armant. 10. Auxilia et sociō a praefectīs armantur. 11. Nautae amīcum captīvōrum cōnfirmant. 12. Amīcus captīvōrum ā nautīs cōnfirmātur. 13. Perfuga equōs et scaphās parat. 14. Equō et scaphae a perfugā parantur. 15. Faber puerīs pecūniam dat. 16. Pecūnia puerīs ā fabrō datur. 17. Claudius servō scapham dēmōnstrat. 18. Scapha servō a Claudio dēmōnstrātur.

#### 20.

1. The commander summons the auxiliaries. 2. Auxiliaries are summoned by the commander. 3. The engineers are preparing a camp. 4. A camp is prepared by the engineers. 5. The council praises the sailors. 6. The sailors are praised by the council. 7. Brutus, the friend of the slave, assists the allies. 8. The allies are assisted by Brutus, the friend of the slave. 9. The captive is showing [his] helmet to the tribune. 10. The helmet is shown to the tribune by the captive. 11. Sulla gives the deserters money. 12. Money is given to the deserters by Sulla. 13. The master is encouraging [his] slaves. 14. The slaves are encouraged by the master. 15. The garrisons protect the women and children. 16. The women and children are protected by the garrisons.

# ADJECTIVES IN -US, -A, -UM, SINGULAR NUMBER. PASSIVE VOICE, OTHER TENSES.

Suggestions.—1. Observe that the masculine, feminine, and neuter forms of these adjectives are declined like *servus*, *scapha*, and *bellum* respectively.

2. Genitives in -ī for -iī accent the penult; e.g. con ci'lī.

3. The letters -bā (imperfect), -bi, -bu (future), are used before the personal ending of the passive, as in the active; e.g.  $lau \, d\bar{a} \, b\bar{a}'tur$ ,  $he \, was$  (being) praised,  $lau \, d\bar{a}'bi \, tur$ ,  $he \, will \, be \, praised$ ;  $lau \, d\bar{a} \, bun' \, tur$ ,  $they \, will \, be \, praised$ .

#### 21.

1. Dominus bonus ā servō vocātur. 2. Fēmina bona ā fīliā vocābātur. 3. Concilium bonum ā praefectō vocābitur. 4. Sulla

equum dominī bonī laudat. 5. Puer fīliam fēminae bonae laudābat. 6. Praefectus dēcrētum concilī bonī laudābit. 7. Servus dominō bonō auxilium dat. 8. Nauta fēminae bonae scapham dabat. 9. Tribūnus conciliō bonō pecūniam dabit. 10. Praesidium dominum bonum cōnfirmat. 11. Minerva fēminam bonam cōnfirmābat. 12. Galba concilium bonum cōnfirmābit. 13. Galba, domine bone, captīvum servat. 14. Sulla, fēmina bona, līberōs servābat. 15. Brūtus, concilium bonum, praesidium servābit. 16. Galba ā sociō bonō servātur. 17. Minerva ā fēminā bonā servābātur. 18. Praefectus ā conciliō bonō servābitur.

#### 22.

1. The good master encourages [his] slave. 2. The good daughter was encouraging the children. 3. The good garrison will encourage the common people. 4. The master of the good slave was in camp. 5. The money of the good daughter is in the town. 6. The commander of the good garrison will be in Germany. 7. Brutus gives the good slave a horse. 8. The sailor will give [his] good daughter a boat. 9. Galba was giving the good garrison assistance. 10. The master assists [his] good slave. 11. The woman will assist [her] good daughter. 12. The auxiliaries were assisting the good garrison. 13. Good slave, the master will be in camp. 14. Good daughter, Claudius was an ally, not a deserter. 15. Good garrison, the camp is not in danger. 16. The sailor is summoned by the good slave. 17. The boy was summoned by the good daughter. 18. The commanders will be summoned by the good garrison.

## ADJECTIVES IN -US, -A, -UM, PLURAL NUMBER.

#### 23.

Dominī bonī servos confirmant.
 Fēminae bonae filiās confirmābant.
 Concilia bona captīvos confirmābant.
 Equi dominorum bonorum ā servis laudantur.
 Fīliae fēminārum

bonārum ā puerīs laudābantur. 6. Dēcrēta conciliōrum bonōrum ā praefectō laudābuntur. 7. Equī dominīs bonīs ā servīs dantur. 8. Scaphae fēminīs bonīs ā nautīs dabantur. 9. Dēcrēta conciliīs bonīs ā praefectīs dabuntur. 10. Servī dominōs bonōs iuvant. 11. Amīcī fēminās bonās iuvābant. 12. Tribūnī concilia bona iuvābunt. 13. Est bellum, dominī bonī, in Galliā. 14. Līberī, fēminae bonae, erant in scaphā. 15. In castrīs, concilia bona, auxilia erunt et sociī. 16. Galba cum dominīs bonīs erit in Galliā. 17. Minerva cum fēminīs bonīs erat in Germāniā. 18. Dēcrēta ā conciliīs bonīs servābuntur.

	M.	F.	N.	м.	F.	N.
Sing. No	m. bo'nus	bo'na	bo'n <b>um</b>	Plur. bo'nī	bo'nae	bo'na
Ger	n. bo'n <b>ī</b>	bo'nae	bo'nī	bo n <b>ō'rum</b>	bo n <b>ā'rum</b>	$bon\boldsymbol{\bar{o}'}ru\boldsymbol{m}$
Da	t. bo'n <b>ō</b>	bo'nae	bo'n <b>ō</b>	bo'n <b>īs</b>	bo'n <b>īs</b>	bo'nīs
Acc	c. bo'num	bo'nam	bo'n <b>um</b>	bo'n <b>ōs</b>	bo'n <b>ās</b>	bo'na
Vo	c. bo'ne	bo'na	bo'n <b>um</b>	bo'n <b>ī</b>	bo'nae	bo'na
Ab	l. bo'nō	bo'n <b>ā</b>	bo'n <b>ō</b>	bo'n <b>īs</b>	bo'nīs	bo'nīs

#### 24.

1. The good slaves were assisting [their] masters. 2. The good daughters are assisting Minerva. 3. The good garrisons will assist the common people. 4. The master of the good slaves is in camp. 5. The friends of the good daughters were in the town. 6. The commanders of the good garrisons will be in Gaul. 7. The tribune gives the good slaves money. 8. The sailor was giving [his] good daughters assistance. 9. The commander will give the good garrisons auxiliary [forces]. 10. The masters will praise [their] good slaves. 11. The woman was praising [her] good daughters. 12. The auxiliary [forces] are praising the good garrisons. 13. Good slaves, your master was not in danger. 14. Good daughters, the children are not captives. 15. Good garrisons, the allies will be in camp. 16. The boy is protected by the good slaves. 17. The woman was protected by [her] good daughters. 18. The town will be protected by [means of] good garrisons.

#### ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES.

Suggestions. — 1. When a Latin noun is limited by two adjectives, as in 11, below, do not omit the conjunction.

2. An attributive adjective is applied directly to its noun; e.g. vir bonus, a good man. Adjectives otherwise applied are predicate adjectives; e.g. vir est bonus, the man is good.

#### 25.

1. Nauta erat saucius. Scapha erit nova. Concilium est clārum. 2. Fīlia nautae sauciī saepe iuvābātur. 3. Auxilium multum nautae sauciō ā tribūnō clārō dabātur. 4. Minerva fēminae clārae pecūniam dabit. 5. Sociī dominum saucium et fīliam clāram iuvābant. 6. Praefectus, cum fabrō clārō, māgnō in perīculō erat. 7. Dēcrētum concilī clārī erit bonum. 8. Virī multī sunt et clārī. Galeae erunt novae. Perīcula erant māgna. 9. Fīliae fēminārum sauciārum erant clārae. 10. Līberī fabrōrum sauciōrum sunt multī. 11. Sulla captīvīs clārīs agrōs multōs et māgnōs dabat. 12. Dēcrēta nova praefectīs dēmōnstrantur. 13. Fabrī cum virīs multīs oppidum servābant. 14. Erant in castrīs captīvī multī et sauciī.

	M.	F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	sau'ci us	sau'ci a	sau'ci <b>um</b>
Gen.	sau'ci ī	sau'ci ae	sau'ci ī
Dat.	sau'ci ō	sau'ci ae	sau'ci ō
Acc.	sau'ci <b>um</b>	sau'ci <b>am</b>	sau'ci um
Voc.	sau'ci e	sau'ci <b>a</b>	sau'ci <b>um</b>
Abl.	sau'ci ō	sau'ci <b>ā</b>	sau'ci ō
Plur. Nom.	sau'ci <b>ī</b>	sau'ci ae	sau'ci a
Gen.	sau ci <b>ō'rum</b>	sau ci <b>ā'rum</b>	sau ci <b>ō'rum</b>
Dat.	sau'ci īs	sau'ci <b>īs</b>	sau'ci <b>īs</b>
Acc.	sau'ci ōs	sau'ci <b>ās</b>	sau'ci a
Voc.	sau'ci ī	sau'ci ae	sau'ci a
Abl.	sau'ci <b>īs</b>	sau'ci īs	sau'ci īs

The masculine of sau'ci us is declined like the noun so'ci us with  $-i\bar{\imath}$  instead of  $-\bar{\imath}$  in the gen. sing.; the feminine like ga'-le a; the neuter like con ci'li um. Like bo'nus decline  $cl\bar{a}'rus$ ,  $m\bar{a}'gnus$ , mul'tus, and no'vus.

1. The man will be illustrious. The daughter is good. The town was large. 2. The children of the wounded slave are many. 3. The decree of the illustrious council will encourage the garrison. 4. The allies are armed and will give assistance to many wounded slaves. 5. The tribune was giving the illustrious captive money. 6. The commander shows the auxiliary [forces] the new danger. 7. The engineer and the illustrious captive are armed. 8. The auxiliaries with many allies will be in the town. 9. The tribunes are illustrious. The boats were large. The garrisons will be many. 10. The horses of the allies were praised by the auxiliaries. 11. The children of the wounded allies were in great danger. 12. The common people will assist the wounded allies. 13. The engineers are preparing a large camp. 14. The illustrious commander was the son of a great man.

#### GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

Suggestions.—1. As a general rule, a noun limiting an adjective is put in the *dative*. Some adjectives, however, like **cupidus** and **plēnus**, are followed by the *genitive*. For the *ablative* with adjectives, see Exercise 31.

2. Figures and letters joined to words refer to the Directions at the end of the Exercise. Grammatical sections designated by figures are to be learned; those designated by letters are to be read and applied.

# 27.

1. Perfuga est auxilī¹ cupidus. 2. Bellum erit perīculī¹ plēnum.
3. Captīvus saucius bellī nōn erat cupidus. 4. Oppida virōrum sauciōrum plēna erunt. 5. Praefectī cum sociīs² multīs erunt in oppidīs. 6. Minerva cum fīliā² clārā māgnō in perīculō erat.
7. Dēcrētum parābitur et conciliō clārō dēmōnstrābitur. 8. Concilium erit virōrum clārōrum plēnum. 9. Dēcrētum concilī bonī tribūnum saepe iuvābit. 10. Nautae scaphārum novārum cupidī erant. 11. Fabrī scaphās multās parābunt. 12. Scapha erat nautārum et līberōrum plēna. 13. Praesidium equōrum multōrum est cupidum.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.:  $^1$ **218**, a; Rule 18 (p. 381).  $^2$ **248**, a; Rule 47.

H.: 1399 and I., 1, 2, 3; Rule XVII. (p. 326); 2419, 1; Rule XXIV. I.

	м.	F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	cu'pi d <b>us</b>	cu'pi d <b>a</b>	cu'pi d <b>um</b>
Gen.	cu'pi d <b>ī</b>	cu'pi dae	cu′pi d <b>ī</b>
Dat.	cu'pi d <b>ō</b>	cu'pi dae	$\mathrm{cu'pi}\mathrm{d}\mathbf{\bar{o}}$
Acc.	cu'pi d <b>um</b>	cu'pi d <b>am</b>	cu'pi d <b>um</b>
Voc.	cu'pi de	cu'pi da	cu'pi d <b>um</b>
Abl.	cu'pi d <b>ō</b>	cu'pi d <b>ā</b>	cu'pi dō
Plur. Nom.	cu'pi dī	cu/pi dae	cu/pi da
Gen.	cu pi d <b>ō'rum</b>	cu pi d <b>ā'rum</b>	cu pi d <b>ō'rum</b>
Dat.	cu'pi d <b>īs</b>	cu′pi d <b>īs</b>	cu′pi d <b>īs</b>
Acc.	cu'pi d <b>ōs</b>	cu'pi d <b>ās</b>	cu'pi da
Voc.	cu'pi dī	cu'pi dae	cu'pi da
Abl.	cu'pi d <b>īs</b>	cu'pi d <b>īs</b>	cu'pi d <b>īs</b>
Voc. Abl. Plur. Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc. Voc.	cu'pi de cu'pi dō cu'pi dī cu pi dō'rum cu'pi dīs cu'pi dōs cu'pi dōs	cu'pi da cu'pi dā cu'pi dae cu pi dā'rum cu'pi dīs cu'pi dās cu'pi dae	cu'pi d <b>um</b> cu'pi d <b>ō</b> cu'pi d <b>a</b> cu pi d <b>ō'rum</b> cu'pi d <b>īs</b> cu'pi d <b>a</b> cu'pi d <b>a</b> cu'pi d <b>a</b>

Decline plē'nus like bo' nus.

#### 28.

1. There is a large garrison in the town. 2. The town will be protected by auxiliary [forces]. 3. The garrison was desirous of new auxiliaries. 4. New auxiliaries are often desirous of war. 5. There were many auxiliary [forces] in the camp. 6. The town was full of women and children. 7. The women and children praise the illustrious garrison. 8. The great council will be full of illustrious men. 9. The council is desirous of new allies and much money. 10. The commander was encouraged by a decree of the council. 11. The allies were desirous of new horses. 12. There were many horses in the fields.

#### DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

Suggestions. —1. **Amīcus** has thus far been used as a noun with the genitive. It is properly an adjective, declined like **bonus** and limited by a noun in the dative. Carefully distinguish these uses.

- 2. Inimīcus, 7, is the preposition in, compounded with amīcus. In the syllabication of compounds the parts should be separated; hence, in i  $m\bar{\imath}/cus$ , not i ni  $m\bar{\imath}/cus$ .
  - 3. Et . . . et, as in 4, below, is to be translated both . . . and.

1. Servī dominīs¹ saepe sunt amīcī. 2. Dominī saepe sunt servõrum amīcī. 3. Tribūnus conciliō erat acceptus. 4. Dēcrētum et praesidiō et auxiliīs erit acceptum. 5. Praesidium auxiliīs erit amīcum. 6. Perīculum auxiliōrum praesidiō erat nōtum. 7. Vulgus bellō est inimīcum. 8. Praesidium nōn erat bellī cupidum. 9. Castra erunt nautārum sauciōrum plēna. 10. Servus erat et captīvōrum et perfugārum amīcus. 11. Sociī captīvīs sunt amīcī, perfugīs inimīcī. 12. Perfugae sociīs erant nōtī.

DIRECTIONS. — Learn A. & G.:  ${}^{1}$ **234** and  $\alpha$ ; Rule 28. H.:  ${}^{1}$ **391** and I.; Rule XIV.

		м.	F.	- N.
Sing.	Nom.	a mī'cus	a mī'ca	a mī'cum
	Gen.	a mī'c <b>ī</b>	a mī'c <b>ae</b>	a mī'c <b>ī</b>
	Dat.	a mī'c <b>ō</b>	a mī'c <b>ae</b>	a mī'c <b>ō</b>
	Acc.	a mī'c <b>um</b>	a mī'cam	a mī'c <b>um</b>
	Voc.	a mī'ce	a mī'ca	a mī'c <b>um</b>
	Abl.	a mī'c <b>ō</b>	a mī'c <b>ā</b>	a mī'c <b>ō</b>
Plur.	Nom.	a mī'c <b>ī</b>	a mī'cae	a mī'ca
	Gen.	a mī c <b>ō'rum</b>	a mī c <b>ā'rum</b>	a mī c <b>ō'rum</b>
	Dat.	a mī'c <b>īs</b>	a mī'c <b>īs</b>	a mī'c <b>īs</b>
	Acc.	a mī'c <b>ōs</b>	a mī'c <b>ās</b>	a mī'ca
	Voc.	a mī'c <b>ī</b>	a mī'cae	a mī'ca
	Abl.	a mī'c <b>īs</b>	a mī'c <b>īs</b>	a mī'c <b>īs</b>

Like  $a m \bar{\imath}' cus$  decline ac cep'tus, also  $in i m \bar{\imath}' cus$ ; decline  $n \bar{o}' tus$  like bo' nus.

### 30.

1. The sailor was well known to the commander. 2. The commander is friendly to the children of the sailor. 3. There is danger in camp; the allies are unfriendly to the tribune. 4. The tribune was not a friend of the allies. 5. Assistance will be acceptable to the tribune. 6. Both the commanders and the tribunes were well known to the allies. 7. The camp was full of deserters. 8. The deserters were not unfriendly to the commander of the camp. 9. The commander of the camp was well known to the garrison. 10. Money will be acceptable to the

engineers. 11. The engineers are friendly to the sons of Claudius. 12. The dangers of war are not acceptable to many men.

#### ABLATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

Suggestions. — 1. A few adjectives like  $\mathbf{d}\mathbf{\bar{i}gnus}$  and  $\mathbf{ind}\mathbf{\bar{i}gnus}$  are followed by the *ablative*.

- 2. Possessive pronouns are adjectives agreeing with their nouns in gender, number, and case. They also refer to a possessor, expressed or implied; meus, my; tuus, thy, your, to one possessor; suus, his, her, its, their, to one or more.
- 3. Suus refers to the *subject* of a proposition, as a possessor; e.g. in 2, below, suō refers to vir, the subject (the possessor), but agrees with tribūnō.

#### 31.

1. Praefectus est saucius et auxiliō¹ tuō dīgnus. 2. Vir dīgnus ā tribūnō suō laudābātur. 3. Castra tua erant fabrō tuō indīgna. 4. Castra mea ā fabrō tuō nōn parābantur. 5. Dēcrēta concilī tuī et multa et accepta erant. 6. Sociī tuī dēcrētīs tuīs dīgnī erant. 7. Dominus servō suō pecūniam multam dabat. 8. Servus bonus dominō suō erat dīgnus. 9. Amīcī tuī auxilī meī nōn erunt cupidī. 10. Amīcī meī ā servīs suīs servābuntur. 11. Faber, fīlī mī, est amīcus et tuus et meus. 12. Fēminae fīliābus suīs pecūniam multam dabant. 13. Fīliae tuae pecūniā tuā sunt dīgnae. 14. Meī līberī fīliārum tuārum amīcī sunt.

DIRECTIONS. — Learn A. & G.:  ${}^{1}$ **245** and a, 1; Rule 42. H.:  ${}^{1}$ **421**, III.; Rule XXVI., III.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sing. Nom	. me'us	me'a	me <b>'um</b>	Plur. me'ī	me'ae	me'a
Gen.	me'ī	me'ae	me'ī	me <b>ō'rum</b>	me <b>ā'rum</b>	me <b>ō'ru</b> m
Dat.	me'ō	me'ae	me'ō	me' <b>īs</b>	me'īs	me' <b>īs</b>
Acc.	me'um	me'am	me'um	me' <b>ōs</b>	me' <b>ās</b>	me' <b>a</b>
Voc.	mī	me'a	me'um	me'ī	me'ae	me'a
Abl.	me'ō	me'ā	me'ō	me' <b>īs</b>	me'īs	me' <b>īs</b>

Like me'us decline tu'us and su'us, omitting the vocative; like bo'nus,  $d\bar{\imath}'gnus$ ; like  $a m\bar{\imath}'cus$ ,  $in d\bar{\imath}'gnus$ .

1. The good master was praised by his slave. 2. The slave was not unworthy of his master. 3. My commander is praising his auxiliary [forces]. 4. The auxiliary [forces] are worthy of my commanders. 5. The town was friendly both to your allies and to your auxiliaries. 6. Your allies were not unfriendly to their commanders. 7. My well-known friends are desirous of your boat. 8. Your son will be in the boat with your daughter. 9. The daughters of your commanders were in my camp. 10. My commander with his daughters was in your camp. 11. Your commanders are worthy of their friends. 12. Your daughter is not unworthy of her friends.

#### ADJECTIVES IN -ER.

Suggestions. — 1. The possessive pronouns, noster, our, and vester, your, are adjectives agreeing with their nouns, but they refer to more than one possessor, expressed or implied.

2. When a noun is limited by an adjective and a noun in the genitive, a common order is, adj., gen., noun. See 7.

# 33.

1. Auxilia nostra¹ vulgus miserum dēlectant. 2. Vulgus miserum ab auxiliīs nostrīs dēlectātur. 3. Dēcrētum vestrum sociīs nostrīs nōn erit acceptum. 4. Amīcī nostrī scaphīs suīs dēlectantur. 5. Noster captīvus miser nōn erat cupidus bellī. 6. Bellum nostrum captīvum miserum nōn dēlectat. 7. Misera Claudī fīlia māgnō in perīculō est. 8. Vestrī sociī nōtī agrōs nostrōs vastant. 9. Agrī nostrī ā sociīs vestrīs vastantur. 10. Oppidum nostrōrum sociōrum miserōrum praesidiō vastātur. 11. Praesidium vestrum oppida nostra vastat. 12. Praefectus nostrō captīvō miserō equum suum dabit. 13. Amīcī fīliārum vestrārum perfugīs auxilium dabunt. 14. Fīliae captīvōrum nostrōrum nōn sunt in Galliā.

Direction. - Learn A. & G.: 1197; Rule 2.

H.: 1438 and 1; Rule XXXIV.

		м.	F.	N.
Sing.	Nom.	no'ster	no'stra	no'strum
	Gen.	no'strī	no'strae	no'strī
	Dat.	no'str <b>ō</b>	no'strae	no'str <b>ō</b>
	Acc.	no'strum	no'stram	no'strum
	Voc.	no'ster	no'stra	no'strum
	Abl.	no'str <b>ō</b>	no'strā	no'str <b>ō</b> .
Plur.	Nom.	no'strī	no'strae	no'stra
	Gen.	no str <b>ō'rum</b>	no str <b>ā'rum</b>	no str <b>ō'rum</b>
	Dat.	no'str <b>īs</b>	no'str <b>īs</b>	no'strīs
	Acc.	no'str <b>ōs</b>	no'str <b>ās</b>	no'stra
	Voc.	no'strī	no'strae	no'stra
	Abl.	no'str <b>īs</b>	no'str <b>īs</b>	no'str <b>īs</b>
		м.	F.	N.
Sing.	Nom.	mi'ser	mi'se ra	mi'se rum
	Gen.	mi'se rī	mi'se rae	mi'se rī
	Dat.	mi'se rō	mi'se rae	mi'se rō
	Acc.		mi'se ram	mi'se rum
	Voc.		mi'se ra	mi'se rum
	Abl.	mi'se r <b>ō</b>	mi'se rā	mi'se r <b>ō</b>
Plur.	Nom.	mi'se rī	mi'se rae	mi'se ra
	Gen.	mi se r <b>ō'rum</b>	mi se rā'rum	mi se r <b>ō</b> 'rum
	Dat.	mi'se rīs	mi'se r <b>īs</b>	mi'se r <b>īs</b>
	Acc.	mi'se r <b>ōs</b>	mi'se r <b>ās</b>	mi'se ra
	Voc.	mi'se rī	mi'se rae	mi'se ra
	Abl.	mi'se r <b>īs</b>	mi'se r <b>īs</b>	mi'se r <b>īs</b>

Like no'ster decline ve'ster.

# 34.

1. Our new boat delights the children. 2. Both sons and daughters are delighted with our boat. 3. Our auxiliary [forces] delight their commander. 4. Our commander is delighted with his auxiliary forces. 5. The fields of our allies are laid waste by the unworthy garrison. 6. The wounded commander was assisted by our friends. 7. The field will be protected by our auxiliaries. 8. The garrisons of your towns were desirous of assistance. 9. Your towns are worthy of good garrisons. 10. The friends of our slaves lay waste many unfortunate towns. 11. In our council there were many illustrious men. 12. The council

will be friendly to your allies. 13. The unworthy garrison lays waste our unfortunate town. 14. Our unfortunate town is laid waste by the unworthy garrison.

#### ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS.

Suggestion.—Adjectives and possessive pronouns are often used as nouns; e.g. amīcus, a friend. Especially are many masc. and neut. pl. forms thus used; e.g. multī, the many,—many,—many men; multa, many things; bonī, the good,—good men; bona, goods; nostrī, our forces, our men; suī, his (their) forces, his (their) men; sua, his (their) property.

#### 35.

1. Multī bonōs laudant. 2. Auxilia nostrōs servābunt. 3. Nostrī agrōs vulgī vastābant. 4. Bonī nōn erunt bellōrum cupidī. 5. Brūtus amīcō meō sua dabit. 6. Praefectī tribūnō suōs dēmōnstrābant. 7. Tribūnus ā suīs servābitur. 8. Multa fīliās nostrās dēlectābunt. 9. Fēminae bonae fīliābus meīs multa dabunt. 10. Bona captīvōrum sociīs nostrīs dabantur. 11. Sociī nostrī amīcīs suīs bona dēmōnstrant. 12. Amīcī sociōrum ā nostrīs cōnfirmābuntur.

Directions.—1. Read A. & G.: \*188 and Remark; 190, a; 197, d. H.: \*441 and 1; 449 and 4.

2. Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup>Rule 30. <sup>2</sup>Rule 13.

H.: <sup>1</sup>Rule V. <sup>2</sup>Rule III.

### 36.

1. Ours (our forces) were assisting the garrison. 2. Worthy friends will assist ours (our forces). 3. There will be many good [men] in the council. 4. The council will give many [things] to our slaves. 5. Many [things] will be acceptable to our slaves. 6. The good are worthy of their friends. 7. The commander will protect the goods of his friends. 8. Our friends will give their [property] to the commander. 9. Worthy men were encouraging the good. 10. The tribune was encouraged by

his [forces]. 11. Ours (our men) often praise the well-known tribune. 12. The well-known tribune is praised by ours (our men).

# RECAPITULATION, WITH NEW NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Suggestion. — Gloriae causa in 15, below, is to be translated for the sake of glory.

#### 37.

1. Fuga fēminārum¹ et līberōrum causam tuam nōn iuvābit.
2. Causa fugae erat perīculum prōvinciae nostrae. 3. Nostra prōvincia ā sociīs tuīs vastābātur. 4. Praefectus glōriā māgnā erat dīgnus. 5. Māgna est glōria causae tuae. 6. Sociī nostrī causae tuae erant amīcī. 7. Praesidium nostrum prōvinciam tuam nōn vastābit. 8. Est silva māgna in prōvinciā nostrā. 9. Erant in silvā perfugae multī. 10. Silvae multae et māgnae prōvinciās servābunt. 11. Sunt oppida multa in prōvinciīs nostrīs. 12. Misera oppidōrum praesidia auxilī erant cupida. 13. Nostrī oppidīs² auxilium dabunt. 14. Bellum prōvinciīs nōn est acceptum. 15. Sociī nostrī glōriae causā armābantur. 16. Glōria bellī nostrōs sociōs dēlectābit.

Directions. — 1. Learn A. & G.: 1213; Rule 14. 2224; 225; Rule 21. H.: 1395; Rule XVI. 2384 and II.; Rule XII., II.

2. Decline cau'sa, fu'ga, sil'va like nau'ta;  $pr\bar{o}vin'cia$  like  $pec\bar{u}'nia$ .

# 38.

1. Ours (our forces) were protected by a forest. 2. The forest is in our province. 3. A slave shows the forest to the commanders. 4. There were many wounded men in the forest. 5. The illustrious commander of the province is a worthy man. 6. The worthy commander will give the province assistance. 7. The province will be protected by new auxiliary [forces]. 8. The well-known allies will be friendly to our cause. 9. Our cause is

the cause of our provinces. 10. The good will encourage our cause and protect our glory. 11. Our garrisons and auxiliary forces are the glory of our commanders. 12. Our provinces were full of large forests. 13. Many [men] were praising the forests and the friendly provinces.

# RECAPITULATION, WITH NEW NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Suggestion.—**Hīberna** was originally the neuter plural of an adjective declined like **bonus**, the expression **hīberna** castra meaning winter camp, winter quarters. Later, castra was omitted, leaving **hīberna** with the combined signification of both words. Many adjectives are thus used in all numbers and genders. Compare Suggestion, Exercise 35.

#### 39.

1. Nūntius lēgātum et praefectum confirmābat. 2. Lēgātus nūntium et praesidium confirmābit. 3. Provincia et lēgāto et nūntio erit amīca. 4. Nūntiī amīcī et lēgātī populo Romāno erant dīgnī. 5. Lēgātus erat provinciae acceptus. 6. Māgnum est imperium populī Romānī. 7. Imperium māgnum populo Romāno dabātur. 8. Populus Romānus lēgāto dīgno imperium dabit. 9. Domicilium lēgāto clāro dīgnum est. 10. Lēgātī nostrī domicilia in Galliā parābant. 11. Nota nūntiorum domicilia sunt in provinciā. 12. Nūntiī ā lēgātīs servābantur. 13. Lēgātī nūntiīs pecūniam multam dabant. 14. Pecūnia lēgātorum nūntios dēlectābat. 15. Nostrī hīberna parābunt. 16. Hīberna ā nostrīs parābuntur.

Directions. — 1. Learn A. & G. :  ${}^{1}$ 225, e.

H.: 1384 and I.

2. Decline  $n\bar{u}n'tius$  like so'cius;  $l\bar{e}g\bar{a}'tus$  and praefec'tus like  $capt\bar{i}'ous$ ; po'pulus like do'minus;  $R\bar{o}m\bar{o}'nus$  like  $am\bar{i}'cus$ ; impe'rium and domici'-lium like conci'lium;  $h\bar{i}ber'na$  like the plural of  $d\bar{e}cr\bar{e}'tum$ .

# 40

1. Many [men] were protecting the worthy messenger. 2. The Roman people will give the messenger a new abode. 3. The

abode of the messenger is in our province. 4. The well-known messenger is worthy of the Roman people. 5. New power was given to a friend of the illustrious lieutenant. 6. The lieutenant will protect the power of the Roman people. 7. The good are not unfriendly to the ambassador and the Roman people. 8. The flight of the messengers will not delight the Roman people. 9. The messengers are unworthy of power. 10. Friends will assist the unfortunate messengers. 11. The abodes of the deserters are well-known to the messengers. 12. The danger to (genitive) the winter [quarters] was not great. 13. The winter [quarters] were protected by our lieutenants. 14. Our lieutenants with many messengers are in the winter [quarters].

# NOUNS. THIRD DECLENSION.

------

# NOUNS IN -OR, MASCULINE GENDER, SINGULAR NUMBER.

Suggestion. - Nom. and voc. sign -; gen., is; dat., i; acc., em; abl., e.

#### 41.

1. Ōrātor est amīcus meus. 2. Victor erat ōrātōris amīcus. 3. Ōrātor honōre¹ māgnō dīgnus est. 4. Victor clārus nostrōs cōnfirmābit. 5. Honor victōris ōrātōrem dēlectābit. 6. Honor novus victōrī ab ōrātōre dabātur. 7. Concilium novum honōre victōris dēlectātur. 8. Ōrātor et victōrem et bellum laudābat. 9. Populus Rōmānus nostrō ōrātōrī clārō honōrem māgnum dat. 10. Populus Rōmānus honōris est cupidus. 11. Glōria populī Rōmānī ā victōre servābātur. 12. Honor populī Rōmānī ab ōrātōre servābitur.

Directions.—1. Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup> 65, α. H.: <sup>1</sup> 99.

<sup>2.</sup> Nouns in -or are masculine; but apply Direction, Exercise 7. Exceptions to the special rules for endings of the third declension will be elsewhere noted.

1. The orator was a friend of the victor. 2. The victor will assist the children of the orator. 3. The orator was protecting the honor of the victor. 4. Honor was given to the illustrious victor. 5. The victor was worthy of honor. 6. The well-known orator delights the Roman people. 7. The Roman people praise the orator and the victor. 8. The victor was showing our camp to the orator. 9. The tribune was summoned by the orator and the victor. 10. The tribune is a friend of the orator. 11. Our commanders are friendly to the honor of worthy men. 12. The orator and the victor were not unworthy of honor.

#### NOUNS IN -OR, PLURAL NUMBER.

Suggestions. — 1. Nom., acc., and voc. case-ending,  $-\bar{e}s$ ; gen., -um; dat. and abl., -ibus.

2. A collective noun usually takes a singular verb, but if the thought of the individual prevails, the plural is often used.

# 43.

1. Populus Rōmānus victōrēs armābat et ōrātōrēs cōnfirmābat. 2. Ōrātōrēs victōribus honōrēs dabunt. 3. Victōrēs saepe honōrum cupidī sunt. 4. Honōrēs et victōribus et ōrātōribus dabuntur. 5. Līberī ōrātōrum et victōrum honōribus nōn sunt indīgnī. 6. Bonī ab ōrātōribus et victōribus cōnfirmābuntur. 7. Uxor senātōris erat soror uxōris meae. 8. Vulgus uxōrem senātōris, sorōrem fēminae bonae, laudat. 9. Senātor uxōre suā est dīgnus. 10. Senātōrēs uxōrēs suās et sorōrēs vocābant. 11. Uxōrēs senātōrum sorōribus ōrātōrum pecūniam dabunt. 12. Sorōrēs uxōrī victōris pecūniam dēmōnstrant. 13. Amīcī sorōrum ā senātōribus cōnfirmābantur.

Sing. Nom.	ho'nor	ō rā' tor	Sing. Acc.	ho nō'r <b>em</b>	$\bar{\mathrm{o}}\ \mathrm{r}\bar{\mathrm{a}}\ \mathrm{t}\bar{\mathrm{o}}'\mathrm{r}\mathbf{e}\mathbf{m}$
Gen.	ho nō'ris	ō rā tō'r <b>is</b>	Voc.	ho'nor	ō rā'tor
Dat.	ho nō'rī	ō rā tō'r <b>ī</b>	Abl.	ho no're	ō rā tō're

Plur. Nom. ho nō'rēs ō rā tō'rēs
Gen. ho nō'rum ō rā tō'rum
Dat. ho nō'ri bus ō rā tō'ri bus

Plur. Acc, ho nō'r**ēs**  $\ddot{o}$  rā tō'r**ēs** Voc. ho nō'r**ēs**  $\ddot{o}$  rā tō'r**ēs** Abl. ho nō'r**i bus**  $\ddot{o}$  rā tō'r**i bus** 

Like ho'nor decline so'ror, u'xor and vic'tor; like  $\bar{o}r\bar{a}'tor$ , se  $n\bar{a}'tor$ .

#### 44.

1. The senators were protecting their wives and sisters. 2. The sisters were protected by the senators. 3. The sisters of the senators were the wives of orators. 4. The orators were worthy of their good wives. 5. The friends of our wives and sisters are sons of senators. 6. Our good wives are with the victors and their sisters. 7. The victors will be in Gaul with our orators. 8. The honors of the victors will delight our orators. 9. Orators will praise the victors and the worthy senators. 10. The senators will be encouraged by honors. 11. The Roman people give honors to their senators. 12. Honors are given both to the victors and the orators. 13. Our [property] will be given to our wives and sisters.

# NOUNS IN $-I\overline{O}$ , FEMININE GENDER.

Suggestions. -1. Case-endings will be as in Exercises 41 and 43 until further mention.

- 2. Nouns in -iō have lost a final n from the nom. and voc. sing., which must be replaced to form the stem to which the case signs are affixed; e.g. legiō, the nom., becomes legiōn, the stem; gen., legiōnis, etc.
- 3. To Vesontio, to Rome, etc., meaning in the direction of, is expressed by the accusative case: e.g. Vesontionem, Roman, etc.
- 4. Verbs like monet; i.e. Pres. monet, monent; Imp. monēbat, monēbant; Fut. monēbit, monēbunt, are of the Second Conjugation.
- 5. Verbs like dūcit; i.e. Pres.  $d\bar{u}$ cit,  $d\bar{u}$ cunt; Imp.  $d\bar{u}$ cēbat,  $d\bar{u}$ cēbant; Fut.  $d\bar{u}$ cet,  $d\bar{u}$ cent, are of the Third Conjugation.

# 45.

Vesontiō¹ et Avaricum in Galliā sunt.
 Praefectus Vesontiōnis nātiōnem² monet.
 Nātiō ā praefectō Vesontiōnis monētur.
 Tribūnus legiōnem Rōmam³ dūcit.
 Legiō Rōmam

ā tribūnō dūcitur. 6. Honor nātiōnis glōria legiōnis est. 7. Populus Rōmānus Vesontiōnem auxilium mīttit. 8. Auxilium Vesontiōnem ā populō Rōmānō mīttitur. 9. Senātor nātiōnī amīcus erat, legiōnī inimīcus. 10. Ūrātor legiōne et nātiōne est dīgnus. 11. Nātiōnēs Galliae Genāvam legiōnēs multās mīttunt et auxilia sua monent. 12. Legiōnēs multae Genāvam ā nātiōnibus Galliae mīttuntur et auxilia monentur. 13. Victōrēs legiōnibus nostrīs et nātiōnibus Galliae erant nōtī. 14. Amīcī nātiōnum erant legiōnum nostrārum amīcī. 15. Victōrēs legiōnēs suās Avaricum dūcunt. 16. Multae legiōnēs Avaricum dūcuntur.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 129, 1, 2, and Note. 265, b. 3258, b. H.: 142, I., 1, 2; II., 1, 2. 2105 and 100, 3. 380 and II.; Rule X., II.

Sing	Nom.	nā/ti ō	Plur. nā ti ō'n <b>ēs</b>	Sing. Ve son'ti ō
	Gen.	nā ti ō'n <b>is</b>	nā ti ō'n <b>um</b>	Ve son ti ō'n <b>is</b>
	Dat.	nā ti ō'n <b>ī</b>	nā ti ō'n <b>i bus</b>	Ve son ti ō'n <b>ī</b>
	Acc.	$n\bar{a}$ ti $\bar{o}'n$ em	nā ti ō'n <b>ēs</b>	Ve son ti ō'n <b>em</b>
	Voc.	nā'ti ō	nā ti ō'n <b>ēs</b>	Ve son'ti ō
	Abl.	nā ti ō'n <b>e</b>	nā ti ō'n <b>i bus</b>	Ve son ti ō'n <b>e</b>

Like  $n\bar{a}'ti\,\bar{o}$  decline  $le'gi\,\bar{o}$ . Decline new nouns of the first and second declension wherever introduced.

#### 46.

1. There is in Gaul an unfriendly nation. 2. Allies give assistance to the unworthy nation. 3. The allies of the nation lay waste our provinces. 4. The Roman people send many legions to Geneva. 5. A tribune with his legion is sent to Vesontio. 6. The garrison of Vesontio is well-known to the legion. 7. The commander of a legion leads auxiliary [forces] to Avaricum. 8. The auxiliary [forces] with our legions will protect the province. 9. The nations of Germany will be unfriendly to our legions. 10. The commanders of our legions warn the nations of Germany. 11. Illustrious men of many nations are sent to Rome. 12. Our ambassadors will not be acceptable to the nations of Germany.

# NOUNS IN -AS, FEMININE GENDER.

Suggestions. — 1. The case-ending of the nom. and voc. sing. is -s.

- 2. In these nouns a final **t** of the stem has been suppressed before the case ending -**s**: e.g.  $c\bar{i}vit\bar{a}\mathbf{s}$  is for  $c\bar{i}vit\bar{a}(t)\mathbf{s}$ . Decline, therefore, nom.  $c\bar{i}vit\bar{a}\mathbf{s}$ ; gen.  $c\bar{i}vit\bar{a}\mathbf{t}\mathbf{s}$ , etc.
- 3. Studet, he is devoted to, i.e. he desires; persuadet, he makes it pleasant to, i.e. he persuades; and favet, he is favorable to, i.e. he favors; are followed by the dative.

#### 47.

1. Cīvitās lībertātī favet et potestātī studet. 2. Populus Rōmānus lībertāte est dīgnus. 3. Rōma est potestātis et lībertātis domicilium. 4. Māgna est potestās et lībertās cīvitātis. 5. Senātōrēs nōbilitātī favent et cīvitātī persuādent. 6. Cīvitās potestātem māgnam nōbilitātī dabit. 7. Nōbilitās legiōnibus multīs lībertātem populī Rōmānī servābit. 8. Māgna est glōria et honor nōbilitātis. 9. Praefectus clārus nōbilitātem dūcēbat. 10. Imperium cīvitātum inimīcārum nōbilitātem monēbat. 11. Ōrātor nōtus et nōbilitātī et cīvitātibus persuādet. 12. Nōbilitās cīvitātēs Galliae monēbant. 13. Amīcī nōbilitātis ā cīvitātibus monēbantur. 14. Virī clārī Rōmam ā nōbilitātē mīttēbantur. 15. Praefectī auxilia Vesontiōnem mīttēbant.

DIRECTION. — Read A. & G.: \* 227, e and 3.

H.: \* 385; 371, III., Note 3.

Learn A. & G.: \* 1227; Rule 22.

H.: \* 1385, I., II.

Sing. Nom. cī'vi tās Plur. cī vi tā'tēs Gen. cī vi tā'tis cī vi tā'tum (ium) Dat. cī vi tā'tī cī vi tā'ti bus Acc. cī vi tā/tem cī vi tā'tēs (īs) Voc. cī/vi tās cī vi tā/tēs Abl. cī vi tā/te cī vi tā/ti bus Sing. Nom. lī ber'tās Plur, li ber tā/tēs Gen. lī ber tā/tis lī ber tā'tum (ium) Dat. lī ber tā/tī lī ber tā'ti bus Acc. lī ber tā'tem lī ber tā'tēs (īs) Voc. lī ber'tās lī ber tā/tēs Abl. lī ber tā'te lī ber tā/ti bus

Like  $c\bar{\imath}'vit\bar{a}s$  decline  $n\bar{o}$   $bi'lit\bar{a}s$ ; like  $l\bar{\imath}$   $ber't\bar{a}s$ , po  $te'st\bar{a}s$ .

1. The nobility desires power. 2. The Roman people will give power to the nobility. 3. The power of the nobility is great. 4. The state is desirous of liberty and power. 5. Liberty will give power to a state. 6. The state is not unworthy of power and liberty. 7. The good were praising the state and the nobility. 8. The nobility was worthy of the state. 9. The states of Germany favor liberty. 10. Our senators were admonishing (warning) the states. 11. Unfriendly orators favor the states. 12. The nobility of the states was sending many legions to Geneva. 13. The commander was sending the auxiliaries to Avaricum.

# NOUNS IN $-D\overline{O}$ (gen. -inis), FEMININE GENDER. ALSO HOM $\overline{O}$ AND CAESAR.

Suggestions. — 1. Homō and nouns in -dō have lost a final n of the stem in the nom, and voc. sing. In the other cases ō preceding n has become i. Hence, nom, homō, gen, hominis, etc.; nom, fortitūdō, gen, fortitūdinis, etc.

2. Ex-pellit means he drives out; it is followed by the ablative, often with a preposition, to denote the place from which.

# 49.

1. Vir clārus est Caesar, servus Caesaris bonus homō. 2. Caesar hominī bonō, servō suō, lībertātem dabit. 3. Amīcī Caesaris hominem dīgnum confirmābunt. 4. Est multitūdo hominum inimīcorum in Galliā. 5. Sociī īgnotī multitūdinī inimīcæ favēbant. 6. Nostrī cīvitāte¹ hominēs indīgnos expellunt. 7. Fuga multitūdinis Caesarem monēbit. 8. Caesar nostrōs, non multitūdinem, armābit. 9. Caesar fortitūdinem confirmābit et victorēs multīs cum honoribus Romam mīttet. 10. Vesontio fortitūdine tribūnī, hominis clārī, servābitur. 11. Tribūnus cum Caesare et multitūdine nobilitātis Vesontionem mīttētur. 12. Māgna est potestās fortitūdinis. 13. Praefectī indīgnī multīs cum hominibus, perfugīs et servīs, provinciā expelluntur. 14. Praefectus provinciae

Caesarī et hominibus multīs est nōtus. 15. Multī hominēs glōriae causā fortitūdinī student. 16. Tribūnī legiōnēs multās Genāvam dūcent.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1243 and a; Rule 38. H.: 1413; 414, I.; Rule XXII.

> Sing. Nom. ho'mō Plur, ho'mines Gen. ho'mi nis ho'mi num Dat ho'minī ho mi'ni bus Acc. ho/minem ho/mines Voc. ho/mō ho'mi nēs Abl. ho/mine ho mi/ni bus Sing. Nom. for ti tū'dō Plur, for ti tū'di nēs Gen. for ti tū'di nis for ti tū'di num Dat. for ti tū'di nī for ti tū di'ni bus Acc. for ti tū'di nem for ti tū/di nēs Voc. for ti tū/dō for ti tū'di nēs Abl. for ti tū'di ne for ti tū di'ni bus

Like for  $ti\,t\bar{u}'d\bar{o}$  decline  $mul\,ti\,t\bar{u}'d\bar{o}$ . Write the declension of Cae'sar from the Latin sentences.

#### 50.

1. The illustrious commander is the son of an unworthy man.
2. Caesar will send the illustrious man to Rome.
3. Rome is the abode of bravery.
4. The bravery of the multitude will delight Caesar.
5. Caesar will encourage bravery.
6. The nobility desire war and persuade the multitude.
7. The multitude is encouraged by Caesar's bravery.
8. Caesar is not unworthy of the multitude.
9. The multitude desire a worthy man.
10. A good cause is not assisted by an unworthy man.
11. Men unfriendly to Caesar were laying waste our fields.
12. Deserters are friendly to the unworthy men.
13. There were many sailors with the unfriendly men.
14. Slaves are friends of the unworthy men.
15. The states prepare war and drive the unworthy multitude from the province.

# NOUNS IN $-\overline{O}$ (gen. $-\overline{o}$ nis), MASCULINE GENDER.

Suggestions. — 1. These nouns, like those in  $-i\bar{o}$ , and  $-d\bar{o}$ , have lost the final n of the stem in the nom. and voc. sing., but unlike those nouns retain  $\bar{o}$  before n in the other cases.

- 2. Ad means to, i.e. up to; in means to, i.e. to a position within, into, into the midst of; in, with the ablative, means in (situation in a place).
- 3. Do, does and did, when used as auxiliary verbs, are not to be translated; e.g. he does praise, laudat; they do favor, favent.

#### 51.

1. Homō saucius est cālō, et perfuga miser latrō est. 2. Auxilium et latrōnī et cālōnī est acceptum. 3. Erant cum latrōne et cālōne hominēs multī et inimīcī. 4. Hominēs indīgnī ad Caesarem¹ dūcēbantur. 5. Caesar cālōnem ad castra,¹ latrōnem ad oppidum, Genāvam, mīttēbat. 6. Fīlius cālōnis et fīlia latrōnis ad prōvinciam mīttentur. 7. Cicerō clārus erat ōrātor nōtus. 8. Ōrātor māgnus nōn est latrōnum et cālōnum amīcus. 9. Cālōnēs et latrōnēs Cicerōnī sunt nōtī. 10. Cicerō cālōnibus et latrōnibus nōn favēbit. 11. Potestās Cicerōnis cālōnēs et latrōnēs cīvitāte expellit. 12. Cīvitās ā Cicerōne monēbātur. 13. Populus Rōmānus Cicerōnem laudat. 14. Praefectus inimīcus cum cālōnibus multīs et latrōnibus suōs in prōvinciam dūcet.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.:  $^1$ 258, last clause. H.:  $^1$ 380 and I.; Rule X., I.

Sing. Nom.	cā'lō	Plur. cā lō'n <b>ēs</b>	Sing. Ci'ce rō
Gen.	$c\bar{a}l\bar{o}'n$ is	$c\bar{a}l\bar{o}'n$ um	Ci ce rō'n <b>is</b>
Dat.	$c\bar{a}l\bar{o}'n\bar{\imath}$	cā lō'n <b>i bus</b>	$\mathrm{Ci}\mathrm{ce}\mathrm{r}ar{\mathrm{o}}'\mathrm{n}ar{\mathrm{i}}$
Acc.	cā lō'n <b>em</b>	cā lō'n <b>ēs</b>	Ci ce rō'nem
Voc.	cā'lō	cā lō'n <b>ēs</b>	Ci'ce rō
Abl.	cā lō'n <b>e</b>	cā lō'n <b>i bus</b>	Ci ce rō'n <b>e</b>

Like  $c\bar{a}'l\bar{o}$  decline  $la'tr\bar{o}$ .

#### 52.

1. A robber was led into camp by a servant. 2. The robber shows the servant his goods and money. 3. The servant is desirous of the robber's money. 4. Our commander [does] not

favor the robber. 5. The commander of the camp will send the servant to Italy, the robber to the town, Geneva. 6. Friends of the servant drive the robber from the town. 7. The forests of Italy are full of servants and robbers. 8. Sulla leads many servants and robbers to Rome. 9. Sulla's commanders are not friends of Cicero and the nobility. 10. Sulla with many servants and robbers will lay waste our fields. 11. The well-known victor will give the servants and robbers the fields of Italy. 12. Sulla is not encouraged by Cicero. 13. Robbers [do] not praise Cicero. 14. The Roman people will give Cicero much honor.

# NOUNS IN -L. ALSO FRATER.

Suggestions. — 1. Nouns in -1 are usually masculine by signification.

2. The nom. and voc. form  $fr\bar{a}ter$  is replaced by a shorter stem  $fr\bar{a}tr$  in the other cases. Decline nom.  $fr\bar{a}ter$ , gen.  $fr\bar{a}tris$ , etc.

3. From Avaricum, from Geneva, etc., is expressed by the ablative case; e.g. Avaricō,  $Gen\bar{a}v\bar{a}$ , etc.

# 53.

1. Frāter meus consulem socium¹ appellat, exsulem amīcum.
2. Consul ā frātre meo socius² appellātur, exsul amīcus.
3. Meus frāter clārus et consulī et exsulī persuādēbat.
4. Cīvitās frātrī meo favēbat.
5. Populus Romānus frātrem meum Avarico,³ consulem Genāvā vocābat.
6. Nūntius cum exsule Romā ā consule in provinciam mīttēbātur.
7. Māgna est potestās consulis, honor exsulis, fortitūdō frātris meī.
8. Frātrēs senātoris consulēs et exsulēs monēbunt.
9. Nobilitās cum consulibus et exsulibus ā frātribus monēbitur.
10. Et consulēs et exsulēs frātrēs senātoris armābunt.
11. Perīculum exsulum et consulum non est frātribus īgnotum.
12. Auxilium frātrum consulibus erit acceptum.
13. Nostrī frātrem meum tribūnum creant.
14. Frāter meus ā nostrīs tribūnus creātur.

Directions. — Learn A. & G.: 1239, 1 and a; Rule 32. 2239, 1, Note 2. 3258, a.

H.: 1373; Rule VI. 2373, 2. 8412 and II.

Sing. No	n. frā'ter	Plur. frå	'tr <b>ēs</b>	Sing. con'sul	Plur. cōn'su l <b>ēs</b>
Ger	n. frā'tr <b>is</b>	frâ	'trum	con'su lis	con'su l <b>um</b>
Dat	. frā'tr <b>ī</b>	frā	tri bus	con'su lī	con su'li bus
Acc	e. frå/tren	n frā	'trēs	cōn'su lem	con'su les
Vo	c. frā'ter	frā	'trēs	con'sul	cōn'su l <b>ēs</b>
Ab	l. frā'tre	frā	tri bus	con'sule	con su'li bus

Like con'sul decline ex'sul.

### • 54.

1. The brother of the consul was a prisoner and an exile.
2. The prisoner was sent to the consul from Geneva. 3. The consul will favor his brother, the exile. 4. The servant of the exile was a slave of the consul. 5. The slave was given to the exile by his brother, the consul. 6. Money will be sent from Vesontio to the consul by the exile. 7. The consul calls the exile his illustrious brother. 8. The states elect brothers consuls. 9. A senator calls the exiles friends and brothers. 10. The exiles with their brothers, the consuls, desire power. 11. The state protects the friends of the consuls and the exiles. 12. The nation was giving to the brothers and the exiles great honor. 13. Great honor was given to the consuls by the worthy exiles.

# NOUNS IN -ES, MASCULINE GENDER. ALSO PRĪNCEPS.

Suggestions.—1. These nouns change i of the stem to e before s, the case-sign of the nom. and voc. sing. Before s, p is retained, while t and d are dropped.

- 2. Princeps is the masculine form of an adjective.
- 3. A, ab means from, away from (the outside); ex, from, out of (the interior).

#### 55.

Nōbilitās prīncipem cīvitātis obsidem a Rōmam mīttēbat.
 Obses ex b Galliā in b Ītaliam ab mīlite dūcēbātur.
 Mīles prīncipī, obsidī dīgnō, agrōs Galliae dēmonstrābat.
 Erat cum prīncipe amīcus mīlitis.
 Amīcus erat cālō obsidis, prīncipis ap ab principis ab principis ap ab principis ap ab principis ap ab principis ap ab principis ab principis

clārī. 6. Cālō erat mīlitī amīcus et obside non indīgnus. 7. Prīnceps mīlitem bonum mīttet. 8. Cōnsulēs sunt obsidum cupidī et mīlitēs in Galliam mīttent. 9. Mīlitēs nostrī prīncipēs Galliae monēbant. 10. Prīncipēs cīvitātum obsidēs armābant. 11. Obsidēs dīgnī ā prīncipibus dabantur. 12. Sunt cum obsidibus līberī prīncipum. 13. Obsidēs ā mīlitibus ab Galliā ad Tātaliam dūcentur. 14. Praefectī mīlitum et obsidibus et prīncipibus favēbunt.

Direction. — Read A. & G.: \*184 and 2; 185. b 258, 2. Note 2. H.: \*373, 1. b 412 and I.; 380 and I. Learn A. & G.: 1258; Rule 56. 2183; Rule 1. H.: 1 Rules XXI. and X. 2363; Rule II.

Sing. Nom. ob'ses	Plur. ob'si d <b>ēs</b>	Sing. prīn'ceps	Plur. prin'ci pēs
Gen. ob'si dis	ob'si d <b>um</b>	prīn'ci pis	prin'ci p <b>um</b>
Dat. ob'sidī	ob si'd <b>i bus</b>	prīn'ci pī	prīn ci'pi bus
Acc. ob'si de	m ob'si d <b>ēs</b>	prīn'ci pem	prīn'ci p <b>ēs</b>
Voc. ob'ses	ob'si d <b>ēs</b>	prīn'ceps	prīn'ci p <b>ēs</b>
Abl. ob'si de	ob si'd <b>i bus</b>	prin'ci pe	prin ci/pi bus

Like ob'ses decline mī'les, gen. mī'li tis.

#### 56.

1. A hostage was given to the state by a chief of Gaul. 2. A messenger with a soldier was sent to the chief. 3. The chief gives the hostage to the soldier. 4. The hostage warns the soldier. 5. The power of the soldier and of the chief is well-known to the hostage. 6. The soldier with the hostage is summoned from (out of) Gaul to (into) Italy. 7. Our leading men (chiefs) are desirous of hostages. 8. The province is arming its soldiers and desires assistance. 9. The nations of Gaul will send leading men with many hostages to the province. 10. The allies of the leading men are well-known to the soldiers. 11. Many soldiers were sent by our leading men into Gaul. 12. Honors worthy of illustrious soldiers were given to our leading men.

#### NOUNS IN -US. FEMININE GENDER.

ALSO LAUS AND CUSTOS.

Suggestions. — 1. These nouns are alike in that they drop the consonant (t, d) before -s, the case-ending of the nom. and voc. sing., and retain the preceding vowel quantity.

- 2. Translate the ablative in 6, below, because of.
- 3. Most verbs, like venit; i.e. Pres. venit, veniunt; Imp. veniēbat, veniēbant; Fut. veniet, venient; are of the fourth conjugation.

#### 57.

1. Custōs est vir māgnae virtūtis.¹ 2. Virtūs custōdis mīlitēs nostrōs dēlectābit. 3. Caesar virtūtem laudat et custōdem cōn-firmat. 4. Vir bonus saepe est laudis cupidus. 5. Laus māgna custōdī dīgnō dabitur. 6. Tribūnus virtūte² suā māgnum in perīculum venit. 7. Tribūnus auxiliō studet et ā cōnsule custōdēs postulat. 8. Praefectī multī cum custōdibus ad tribūnum veniunt et auxilium postulant. 9. Virtūs custōdum laude māgnā est dīgna. 10. Custōdēs nostrī laudī et virtūtī nōn erunt inimīcī. 11. Populus Rōmānus māgnam³ laudem et honōrem custōdibus dabat. 12. Custōdēs nostrī mīlitēs honōris māgnī erunt.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.:  ${}^{1}$ **215**; Rule 15.  ${}^{2}$ **245**; Rule 41.  ${}^{8}$ **187** and a, 1.

H.: 1396, V.; Rule XVI. 2416; Rule XXII. 3439 and 1.

Sing. Nom.	cu'stō <b>s</b>	Sing. laus	Sing. vir'tūs
Gen.	cu stō'd <b>is</b>	lau'd <b>is</b>	vir tū't <b>is</b>
Dat.	cu stō′d <b>ī</b>	lau′d <b>ī</b>	vir tū't <b>ī</b>
Acc.	$\mathrm{cu}\;\mathrm{st}\bar{\mathrm{o}}'\mathrm{d}\mathbf{em}$	lau'd <b>em</b>	vir tū't <b>em</b>
Voc.	cu'stōs	laus	vir'tū <b>s</b>
Abl.	cu stō'de	lau'd <b>e</b>	vir tū't <b>e</b>
Plur. Nom.	cu stō'd <b>ēs</b>	Plur. lau'd <b>ēs</b>	Plur, vir tū't <b>ēs</b>
Gen.	cu stō'd <b>um</b>	lau'd <b>um</b>	vir tū't <b>um</b>
Dat.	cu stō'd <b>i bus</b>	lau'd <b>i bus</b>	vir tū't <b>i bus</b>
Acc.	cu stō'd <b>ēs</b>	lau'dēs	vir tū't <b>ēs</b>
Voc.	cu stō'd <b>ēs</b>	lau'd <b>ēs</b>	vir tū't <b>ēs</b>
Abl.	cu stō'di bus	lau'di bus	vir tū't <b>i bus</b>

1. A good soldier desires praise. 2. The commander will give praise to the good soldiers. 3. The guard is a soldier of well-known valor. 4. The state demands from a guard great valor. 5. The state will praise the valor of the guard. 6. Praise will be given to the guard because of valor. 7. The state by its praise encourages the guard. 8. Guards were sent from the province to Geneva. 9. Assistance will be sent to the guards from Rome. 10. The valor of our guards will protect the honor of the Roman people. 11. The honor of the Roman people will be protected by our guards. 12. The guards [do] not protect the state for the sake of praise.

#### NOUNS IN -X. FEMININE GENDER.

Suggestions.—1. These nouns have the case-ending  $\cdot \mathbf{s}$  in the nom. and voc. sing.;  $\mathbf{c}$  and  $\mathbf{g}$  of the stem unite with  $\cdot \mathbf{s}$  to form  $\mathbf{x}$ ; e.g. stem duc, nom.  $duc \cdot \mathbf{s} = \mathbf{dux}$ , gen.  $duc \cdot \mathbf{s}$ , etc.

- 2. Many nouns in -x are masc. by signification.
- 3. Facit, though of the *third conjugation*, is in the present, imperfect, and future, inflected like the *fourth conjugation*.

#### 59.

1. Phalanx erat ducis bonī cupida. 2. Phalanx rēgis duce bonō est dīgna. 3. Rēx frātrem suum ducem phalangis facit. 4. Rēx phalangem suam Rōmā ad prōvinciam dūcet. 5. Dux cum phalange in prōvinciam veniēbat. 6. Nūntius ā rēge in Galliam mīttētur. 7. Nātiōnēs Galliae lēgātōs ad rēgem mīttēbant et pācem postulābant. 8. Pāx rēgī et ducī et phalangī est accepta. 9. Vulgus erit pācis cupidum. 10. Ducēs pācem postulābunt et rēgibus persuādēbunt. 11. Amīcī rēgum pācī favēbunt. 12. Amīcī pācis ducibus nostrīs persuādēbant. 13. Cīvitātēs ducibus et rēgibus suīs sunt dīgnae.

Sing. Nom.  $\operatorname{dux}(x=c-s)$  Plur.  $\operatorname{du'c\bar{e}s}$  Gen.  $\operatorname{du'cis}$   $\operatorname{du'ci}$  du'ci bus

Sing.	Acc. Voc. Abl.	du'c <b>em</b> dux du'c <b>e</b>	Plur.	du'cēs du'cēs du'ci bus
Sing.	Nom. Gen. Dat.	pha'lanx $(x = g - \mathbf{s})$ pha lan'g <b>is</b> pha lan'g <b>ī</b> pha lan'g <b>em</b>	Plur.	pha lan'gēs pha lan'gum pha lan'gi bus pha lan'gēs
	Voc.	pha'lanx pha lan'ge	*	pha lan'g <b>ēs</b> pha lan'g <b>i bus</b>

Like dux decline  $r\bar{e}x$ , gen.  $r\bar{e}'gis$ ,  $p\bar{a}x$ , gen.  $p\bar{a}'cis$ .

#### 60.

1. The leader, a man worthy of the king, was arming his phalanx. 2. The king summons the leader with his phalanx to Rome. 3. The phalanx was friendly to the king and worthy of its leader. 4. The king was giving the leader and the phalanx much praise. 5. The friends of the king will be delighted by the valor of the phalanx. 6. The friends of the leader will assist the king. 7. Unfortunate kings were desiring peace. 8. Messengers of the kings were sent to Rome for the sake of peace. 9. A decree of the state gives peace to the kings. 10. Ambassadors will be sent to the kings. 11. Peace will be granted (given) by the kings. 12. Great nations are delighted with peace.

# Nouns in $-\vec{E}S$ , also urbs and plebs (*I-STEMS*). Feminine gender.

Suggestions.—1. Case-endings in this Exercise are the same as in Exercise 59. The **i** of the stem appears only *before* the case-ending of the gen. plur. (-ium) and *within* the case-ending of the acc. plur. (regularly -īs instead of -ēs).

- 2. For the meaning and use of the word stem, read A. & G. 21 and footnote 2: H. 46 and 1.
- 3. Fert is irregular: Pres. fert, ferunt; Imp. ferēbat, ferēbant; Fut. feret, ferent.

1. Perīculum urbis rēgem monēbit. 2. Rēx urbī mīlitēs auxili causā ¹ dat. 3. Mīlitēs cum plēbe auxilium ferunt. 4. Plēbs cum mīlitibus urbem fortitūdine servābat. 5. Urbs virtūte plēbis et mīlitum servābātur. 6. Rēx plēbem iuvābat et hominēs inimīcōs ex urbe expellēbat. 7. Caedēs exsulum urbibus Ītaliae persuādēbit. 8. Causa caedis miserum concilī dēcrētum est. 9. Plēbs caedī et famī nōn studēbat. 10. Caedēs et famēs plēbī nōn persuādēbunt. 11. Urbēs inimīcae caede et fame vastābantur. 12. Bellum urbīs (-ēs) nostrās vastābat et famis causa erat. 13. Prīncipēs urbium Rōmam pācis causā veniēbant. 14. Pāx famem et caedem urbibus nostrīs expellet. 15. Caedēs saepe famem fert.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.: 1245, c. H.: 1 Rule XXII,

Sing. Nom.	cae'dēs	Plur. cae'dēs	Sing. urbs	Plur. ur'b <b>ēs</b>
Gen.	cae'dis	cae'd <b>i um</b>	ur'bis	ur'b <b>i um</b>
Dat.	cae'dī	cae'd <b>i bus</b>	ur'bī	ur'b <b>i bus</b>
Acc.	cae'dem	cae'dīs (ēs)	ur'bem	ur'bīs (ēs)
Voc.	cae'dēs	cae'd <b>ēs</b>	urbs	ur/b <b>ēs</b>
Abl.	cae'de	cae'di bus	ur'be	ur'b <b>i bus</b>

Notice in these nouns, -i before -um in the gen. plur. ( $cae'd\bar{e}s$  sometimes omits it), and the endings - $\bar{\epsilon}s$  or - $\bar{e}s$  in the acc. plur. Like urbs decline  $pl\bar{e}bs$ ; like the sing, of  $cae'd\bar{e}s$ ,  $fa'm\bar{e}s$ .

# 62.

1. The slaughter of the common people will warn the cities of the province. 2. The cities will be warned by the slaughter of the common people. 3. The danger of famine will persuade the unfortunate cities. 4. The guards of the cities will be warned by famine. 5. Famine will drive the populace away from the cities. 6. War is the cause of famine and slaughter. 7. The unfortunate populace desire the assistance of the city. 8. The city is friendly to the populace and [does] not favor famine and slaughter. 9. Assistance drives away from the city famine and slaughter.

10. The city is praised by the populace. 11. The populace was giving the city much praise. 12. The nations will praise the city [of] Rome.

# NOUNS IN -IS (I-STEMS CONTINUED), ALSO COHORS. FEMININE GENDER.

Suggestion.—In 8, prō hoste habet (he holds for an enemy) is to be translated, he treats as an enemy.

#### 63.

1. Erat in cohorte¹ hostis. 2. Caedēs partis mīlitum hostī erat nōta, partis īgnōta. 3. Homō indīgnus partī praefectōrum nōtus erat, partī īgnōtus. 4. Māgna cohortis pars hostī nōn favēbat. 5. Praefectus cum parte cohortis hostem monēbat. 6. Laus hostis cohortī nōn erat accepta. 7. Praefectus cohortem in inimīcam Galliae partem dūcēbat. 8. Cohors praefectum indīgnum prō hoste habet. 9. Cohortēs hostium multīs prōvinciae partibus nōn favēbunt. 10. Hostēs partīs (-ēs) cīvitātis vastābunt. 11. Partēs cīvitātis ā hostibus vastābuntur, partēs cohortibus nostrīs servābuntur. 12. Custōdēs urbium cohortibus auxilium ferent. 13. Virtūs cohortium nostrārum hostibus persuādēbat. 14. Sociī cohortīs (-ēs) nostrās multīs in prōvinciae partibus iuvābunt.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1258, c, 1. H.: 1425, 1.

> Sing. Nom. ho'stis Plur. ho'stēs Gen. ho/stis ho'sti um Dat. ho/stī ho'sti bus Acc. ho'stem ho'stīs (ēs) Voc. ho'stis ho'stes Abl. ho'ste ho'sti bus Sing. Nom. co'hors Plur. co hor'tes Gen. co hor'tis co hor'ti um (um) Dat. co hor'tī co hor'ti bus

Sing. Acc. co hor'tem Plur. co hor'tīs (ēs)

Voc. co'hors co hor' tēs

Abl. co hor'te co hor'tī bus.

Like co'hors decline pars, gen. par'tis. It has also an adv. acc. par'tim, meaning partly, and an abl. par'tī.

#### 64.

1. An enemy was leading the cohort. 2. The leader is unfriendly to a large part of the cohort. 3. The leader is treated by the cohort as an enemy. 4. The cohort calls the leader an enemy of the Roman people. 5. The cohort will not favor an enemy. 6. The bravery of the leader [does] not persuade the cohort. 7. Claudius is desirous of a part of a cohort, Brutus demands a part. 8. A part was sent to Claudius, a part to Brutus. 9. The danger of parts of the province is well-known to our cohorts. 10. The state will arm its cohorts and warn its enemies. 11. Many cohorts of our enemies were coming into parts of the province. 12. Parts of the province were laid waste by our enemies. 13. Our enemies are driven from a large part of the province by our cohorts. 14. The valor of the cohorts is not unknown to our enemies.

# NOUNS IN -IS (I-STEMS CONTINUED). FEMININE GENDER.

Suggestions.—1.  $C\bar{\imath}v$ is,  $c\bar{l}\bar{a}ss$ is and  $n\bar{a}v$ is (genitives the same) show the i-stem in the abl. sing.,  $c\bar{\imath}v$ is and  $c\bar{l}\bar{a}ss$ is occasionally,  $n\bar{a}v$ is oftener.  $N\bar{a}v$ is has also sometimes the acc. sing.  $n\bar{a}v$ im.

2. The dative sometimes means for (see 3, 4, 6, 8, 12 and 13).

### 65.

1. Nāvis māgna cīvem Rōmānum ad Ītaliam ferēbat. 2. Erat in nāve (-ī) praefectus clāssis et amīcus cīvis. 3. Clāssis māgna praefectō ā cīve (-ī) nōtō parābātur. 4. Cīvis praefectō nāvem (-im) novam et clāssem māgnam parābit. 5. Praefectus clāsse (-ī)

dēlectābitur et cīvī laudem māgnam dabit. 6. Praefectus clāssī¹ suae nautās dēligit. 7. Fīlius praefectī dēligitur praefectus nāvis. 8. Multitūdō cīvium et fabrōrum nāvīs (-ēs) et clāssīs (-ēs) cōnsulī parābit. 9. Clāssēs māgnae, multitūdō nāvium, ā cīvibus armābuntur. 10. Nostrae nāvēs et cōnsulem et cīvīs (-ēs) dēlectābunt. 11. Cīvēs clāssibus et nāvibus dēlectābantur. 12. Cōnsulēs clāssibus praefectōs, nāvibus nautās multōs dēligunt. 13. Multitūdō clāssium cīvibus dēliguntur.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1233, a; Rule 27. H.: 1384, 1, 2).

Like ho'stis decline  $c\bar{\imath}'vis$ ,  $cl\bar{a}s'sis$ , and  $n\bar{a}'vis$ . They also have the abl. sing.  $c\bar{\imath}'v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $cl\bar{a}s's\bar{\imath}$ , and  $n\bar{a}'v\bar{\imath}$ .  $N\bar{a}'vis$  has, besides, the acc. sing.  $n\bar{a}'vim$ .

#### 66.

1. Our admiral (commander of the fleet) is worthy of a new ship. 2. An illustrious citizen, an engineer, will prepare a ship for our fleet. 3. The ship will be equipped (armed) by a Roman citizen. 4. The assistance of the citizen will be acceptable to the state. 5. Sailors are selected for the ship from our fleet. 6. Our fleet will drive the enemy away. 7. The nation will praise the admiral and the worthy citizen. 8. There is a war; a multitude of citizens are demanding the assistance of our ships and fleets. 9. The admiral selects for his fleets and ships many sailors. 10. Many ships and large fleets will assist our citizens. 11. Leading men with many citizens were coming to our fleets and ships. 12. Many illustrious citizens will be protected by our fleets and ships.

# NOUNS IN -IS (I- STEMS CONTINUED). FEMININE GENDER. ALSO LIGER AND ARAR.

Suggestions. — 1. Liger and Arar have the i-stem in both acc. and abl. Orbis shows the i-stem rarely in the abl. sing., finis oftener. They are of the masculine gender.

- 2. Orbis terrae (terrārum) means the circle of the land (lands), i.e. the world.
- 3. Translate trānsdūcit, he leads across. It takes two accusatives. See 3 and 13.

1. Liger et Arar sunt in Galliā. 2. Erant in Ararī scaphae multae, in Ligerī māgnae nāvēs. 3. Caesar legiōnēs¹ multās Ararim¹ trānsdūcit. 4. Fīnis imperī nostrī est māgnus terrae orbis. 5. Imperium nostrum orbem terrae servat et fīnem nōn habet. 6. Māgnum in orbe (-ī) terrārum est imperium populī Rōmānī. 7. Populus Rōmānus imperium sine fīne (-ī) habēbit. 8. Fīnēs hostium nostrōrum sine fīne (-ī) nōn sunt. 9. Hostēs fīnibus novīs studēbant. 10. Hōstēs mīlitēs multōs ē fīnibus suīs in fīnīs (-ēs) nostrōs dūcēbant. 11. Mīlitēs multī, custōdēs fīnium nostrōrum, hostēs prōvinciā expellēbant. 12. Mīlitēs multī Ligerim trānsdūcuntur. 13. Praefectī Ligerim legiōnem trānsdūcunt. 14. Legiō Ararim trānsdūcitur.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.:  ${}^{1}$ **239**,  ${}^{2}$  and  ${}^{b}$ ; Rule 33. H.:  ${}^{1}$ **376**.

Sing. Nom. A'rar

Gen. A'ra ris

Dat. A'ra rī

Acc. A'ra rim

Voc. A'rar Abl. A'rarī Like A'rar decline Li'ger, gen. Li'geris; like ho'stis, or'bis, and  $f\bar{\imath}'nis$ . These have also the abl. sing.  $or'b\bar{\imath}$  and  $f\bar{\imath}'n\bar{\imath}$ .

# 68.

1. The Saône and the Loire were well known to our sailors.
2. Messengers were sent from Geneva to the Saône and the Loire.
3. Our sailors were summoned from the Saône to Vesontio, from the Loire to Avaricum.
4. There is in the great world much territory.
5. The world has a known limit.
6. The valor of our legions will protect the world.
7. The nations of the world are not without limit.
8. The enemy were desiring our territory.
9. The enemy were led across the territory of our allies.
10. The allies were driving the enemy from our cities and territory.

11. The enemy will lead their allies across the Saône.

# NOUNS IN -E AND -AL (I-STEMS CONTINUED). NEUTER GENDER.

Suggestions. — 1. The case-endings of all neuter nouns of the third declension are as follows: Nom., acc., and voc. —; gen. -is; dat. -ī; and abl. -e; pl., nom., acc., and voc. -a; gen. -um; dat. and abl. -ibus.

- 2. In the abl. sing. of neuter i-stems, -ī takes the place of -e, and in the nom., acc., and voc. pl., -i appears before -a.
- 3. In the nom., acc., and voc. sing., i of the stem becomes e unless it is preceded by al or ar, when it is usually dropped; e.g. nom. vectīgāli becomes vectīgal, but nom. mari- becomes mare. Verify Suggestions 1, 2, and 3 by the declensions below.
  - 4. Translate mare nostrum, Mediterranean sea.
  - 5. Translate transit, he goes over, i.e. he crosses; transeunt, they cross.

#### 69.

1. Māgnum est mare¹ nostrum. 2. Pars maris nostrī prōvinciae fīnitima est, pars prōvinciae marī nostrō. 3. Caesar māgnō cum vectīgālī mare² nostrum trānsit. 4. Vectīgal ad Ītaliam marī³ saepe mīttitur. 5. Pars vectīgālis ex prōvinciā, pars ex Galliā mīttēbātur. 6. Nātiōnēs fīnitimae maribus multīs vectīgal māgnum Rōmam mīttunt. 7. Sunt in orbe (-ī) terrārum maria multa et māgna. 8. Clāssēs nostrae sunt marium nostrōrum et vectīgālium custōdēs. 9. Nautae nostrī cum vectīgālibus māgnīs maria īgnōta saepe trānseunt. 10. Nostrī nautae clārī maribus clāssīs (-ēs) hostium expellent. 11. Vectīgālia māgna cōnsulem cōnfirmābunt. 12. Cīvēs vectīgālibus māgnīs nōn erant inimīcī. 13. Lēgātī vectīgālia accepta Rōmam ferēbant.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.:  ${}^{1}$ **65**, c.  ${}^{2}$ **237**, d.  ${}^{3}$ **258**, g, and Note; Rule 48.

# H.: 1111. 2372. 8 Rule XXV.

				THE RESIDENCE	
Sing.	Nom.	ma're	Plur. ma'ria	Sing. vec tī'gal	Plur. vec tī gā'l <b>i a</b>
	Gen.	ma'ris	ma'r <b>i um</b>	vec tī gā'l <b>is</b>	vec tī gā'l <b>i um</b>
	Dat.	ma'rī	ma'ri bus	vec tī gā'l <b>ī</b>	vec tī gā'l <b>i bus</b>
	Acc.	ma're	ma'r <b>i a</b>	vec tī'gal	vec tī gā'l <b>i a</b>
	Voc.	ma're	ma'r <b>i a</b>	vec tī'gal	vec tī gā'l <b>i a</b>
	Abl.	ma'rī	ma'ri bus	vec tī gā'lī	vec tī gā'l <b>i bus</b>

#### 70

1. Germany is adjacent to an unknown sea. 2. The Mediterranean sea is adjacent to Italy. 3. A fleet crosses the Mediterranean sea with tribute. 4. The tribute of the world is given to the Roman state. 5. The world sends tribute to the city [of] Rome. 6. The state desires large tribute. 7. A large part of the Mediterranean sea will be protected by our fleet. 8. Parts of the great seas are unknown to our sailors. 9. Fleets often cross the seas with our revenues. 10. The seas are often unfriendly to our fleets. 11. Our fleets will drive the enemy from the seas and protect our revenues. 12. A part of our revenues is sent by sea from Gaul. 13. The nobility desire large revenues.

# ADJECTIVES IN -IS (I-STEMS), THIRD DECLENSION, TWO TERMINATIONS.

Suggestions.—1. Omnis has but two forms for gender, one for masculine and feminine nouns; e.g. (see 1) omnis honor; omnis glōria; the other for neuters; e.g. omne imperium. These two forms become one in the gen., dat., and abl. sing. and pl.; e.g. (see 2) omnis honōris, omnis glōriae, omnis imperī.

2. The masculine and feminine form of *omn* is is declined like *host* is, but with the ending -ī only, in the dat. and abl. sing.; the neuter form is declined like *mare*.

# 71.

1. Omnis honor et omnis glōria et omne imperium populō Rōmānō dabantur. 2. Omnis honōris et omnis glōriae et omnis imperī cīvitās est cupida. 3. Omnī honōrī et omnī glōriae et omnī imperiō studēbat cōnsul. 4. Omnem honōrem et omnem glōriam et omne imperium Rōma habēbat. 5. Omnī honōre et omnī glōriā et omnī imperiō dīgna est Rōma. 6. Omnēs lēgātī et omnēs cōpiae et omnia auxilia in Galliam mīttentur. 7. Omnium lēgātōrum et omnium cōpiārum et omnium auxiliōrum māgnum erit perīculum. 8. Omnibus lēgātīs et omnibus cōpiīs et omnibus auxiliīs sociī sunt amīcī. 9. Omnīs (-ēs) lēgātōs et omnīs (-ēs)

copias et omnia auxilia hostes urbe expellent. 10. Omnibus legatis et omnibus copias et omnibus auxilias suis digna est Italia. 11. Hostes nobilitatem omnem et omne vulgus armabunt. 12. Omnes hostes Ararim transeunt. 13. Omnis nobilitas cum hostibus proelium committit.

#### omnis, all; stem omni-

		M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Sing.	Nom.	om'nis	om'ne	Plur. om'n <b>ēs</b>	om'n <b>i a</b>
	Gen.	om'n <b>is</b>	om'n <b>is</b>	om'n <b>i um</b>	om'n <b>i um</b>
	Dat.	om'nī	om'nī	om'n <b>i bus</b>	om'ni bus
	Acc.	$om'n\mathbf{em}$	om'ne	om'n <b>īs</b> ( <b>ēs</b> )	om'n <b>i a</b>
	Voc.	om'nis	om'ne	om'n <b>ēs</b>	om'ni a
	Abl.	om'nī	$om'n\overline{i}$	om'n <b>i bus</b>	om'ni bus

#### 72.

1. All the multitude of the enemy cross the Rhine. 2. The slaughter of all the nobility brings great misfortune to every part of the state. 3. Caesar persuades every enemy. 4. Rome will send fleets to every known sea. 5. Our fleets are upon every sea. 6. Hostages will be sent to Rome from all nations. 7. A conspiracy of all unfriendly nations brings danger to our allies. 8. Friendly allies will lay waste all the territory of the enemy. 9. All [of] the towns are in the territory of the enemy. 10. Caesar was giving acceptable assistance to all our allies. 11. Our legions were protecting all parts of Gaul.

# ADJECTIVES IN -IS (I-STEMS CONTINUED), TWO TERMINATIONS. ALSO THE NOUNS GENUS AND ITER, NEUTER GENDER.

Suggestions. —1. Genus is for gener. Since the nom., acc., and voc. sing. of neuter nouns have no case-ending, the use of us instead of er represents a change in the stem-ending. This change occurs in many neuter stems. Iter

does not change its stem-ending, but the letters in in the middle of the stem (itiner-) do not appear in the forms having no case-ending.

2. Translate magna itinera, forced marches. See 7, 8, 9, and 10.

### 73.

1. Nōbilitās, genus virōrum fortium, iter facit. 2. Iter erat plērum perīculī. 3. Fortēs generis omnis virī in itinere erant.
4. Dux,¹ omnī hominum generī acceptus, itineris causā dēligēbātur. 5. Dux fidēlis itinerī bonum custōdum genus dēligēbat.
6. Nostrī custōdēs fortēs ab omnī populī Rōmānī genere laudantur.
7. Māgna itinera saepe sunt ūtilia. 8. Nostrī mīlitēs fortēs māgna itinera saepe faciunt. 9. Omnia hominum genera in prōvinciam māgnīs itineribus venient. 10. Perīcula māgnōrum itinerum ducibus fortibus sunt nōta. 11. Bonī generum omnium ducēs itineribus dēligēbantur. 12. Nostrī ducēs fidēlēs omnibus generibus sunt ūtilēs. 13. Laus māgna nostrīs ducibus ūtilibus dabātur.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 130. H.: 143, 2.

	ūtilis	s, useful; stem	ūtili-	genus, a class. stem gener-	<pre>iter, a march; stem it(in)er-</pre>
		M. F.	N.		
Sing.	Nom.	ū ti l <b>is</b>	ū'ti le	Sing. ge'nus	Sing. i'ter
	Gen.	ū'ti l <b>is</b>	ū'ti lis	ge'ne ris	i ti'ne r <b>is</b>
	Dat.	ū'ti l <b>ī</b>	ū'ti l <b>ī</b>	ge'ne rī	i ti'ne r <b>ī</b>
	Acc.	ū'ti l <b>em</b>	ū'ti l <b>e</b>	ge'nus	i'ter
	Voc.	ū'ti l <b>is</b>	ū'ti le	ge'nus	i'ter
	Abl.	ū ti lī	ū'ti lī	ge'ne r <b>e</b>	i ti'ne r <b>e</b>
Plur.	Nom.	ū'ti lēs	ū ti'li a	Plur. ge'ne ra	Plur. i ti'ne ra
	Gen.	ū ti'li <b>um</b>	ū ti'l <b>i um</b>	ge'ne rum	i ti'ne rum
	Dat.	ū ti'l <b>i bus</b>	ū ti'l <b>i bus</b>	ge ne'ri bus	i ti ne'ri bus
	Acc.	ū'tilīs (ēs)	ū ti'l <b>i a</b>	ge'ne ra	i ti'ne r <b>a</b>
		ū'ti lēs	ū ti'l <b>i a</b>	ge'ne ra	i ti'ne r <b>a</b>
	Abl.	ū ti'l <b>i bus</b>	ū ti'l <b>i bus</b>	ge ne'ri bus	i ti ne'r <b>i bus</b>

Like om'nis decline for'tis, also  $fid\hat{e}'lis$ , whose nom. and gen. sing. are as follows:—

M. F.  $fi d\bar{e}'lis$ , N.  $fi d\bar{e}'le$ ; M. F. and N.  $fi d\bar{e}'lis$ , etc.

1. Every class of our citizens was desiring war. 2. The Roman people were preparing faithful legions for the march. 3. Our brave legions are making the march into Gaul. 4. Brave leaders are on the march with our faithful legions. 5. The enemy will persuade every class of the Roman people. 6. Our legions will protect every class. 7. All classes of revenues are useful to the state. 8. The state desires all classes of revenues. 9. Large revenues will encourage all classes. 10. The sea is useful to many classes of men. 11. There are many brave sailors upon the sea. 12. The enemy make forced marches and come to the sea.

# ADJECTIVES IN -ER (I-STEMS CONTINUED), THREE TERMINATIONS.

Suggestions. — 1. Acer and celer have three forms for gender in the nom. and voc. sing.; e.g. masc. dominus ācer; fem. famēs ācris; neut. frīgus ācre: masc. equus celer; fem. nāvis celeris; neut. flūmen celere (see 1 and 6). Otherwise the forms and declensions are similar to those of omnis.

2. With nouns below denoting persons translate acer, active; elsewhere, violent, bitter.

3. Neuter stems in **or** as well as those in **er** (see Suggestion 1, Ex. 73), often have **us** in the nom. sing.; *e.g.* stem **frīgor**, nom. **frīgus**. The stem **flūmin** changes **i** to **e** in the nom. sing.

### 75.

1. Dominus ācer, famēs ācris, frīgus ācre est.¹ . 2. Servī dominī ācris, famis ācris, frīgoris ācris, nōn erant cupidī. 3. Līberī dominō ācrī, famī ācrī, frīgorī ācrī inimīcī sunt. 4. Cīvēs dominum ācrem, famem ācrem, frīgus ācre nōn postulant. 5. Hostēs dominō ācrī, fame ācrī, frīgore ācrī dīgnī sunt. 6. Erat equus celer, nāvis celeris, flūmen celere in urbe. 7. Puer equī celeris, nāvis celeris, flūminis celeris est amīcus. 8. Faber equō celerī, nāvī celerī, flūminī celerī nōn est inimīcus. 9. Senātor equum celerem, nāvem (-im) celerem, flūmen celere laudābit. 10. Nūn-

tius equō celerī, nāve (-ī) celerī, flūmine ² celerī Rōmam mīttēbātur. 11. Celeria Galliae flūmina et ācria Rhēnī frīgora nostrōs nōn dēlectābant. 12. Gallī flūminibus celeribus, Germānī frīgoribus ācribus dēlectābantur. 13. Perīcula celerium Galliae flūminum et ācrium Germāniae frīgorum Caesarem monent. 14. Gallī flūminibus celeribus Germāniae et frīgoribus ācribus nōn student.

Direction. — Learn A. & G. :  ${}^{1}$ **205**, d.  ${}^{2}$ **258**, g ; Rule 48. H. :  ${}^{1}$ **463**, I.  ${}^{2}$  Rule XXV.

ā/cris

#### ācer, active; stem ācrī-

# M. F. N. Sing. Nom. ā'cer ā'cris ā'cre

ā/cris

Continue like om'nis.

Gen. ā/cris

#### celer, swift; stem celeri-

Sing. ce'ler ce'leris ce'lere ce'leris ce'leris ce'leris Continue like  $\bar{u}'tilis$ .

#### flumen, a river; stem flumin-

### frigus, cold; stem frigor-

Sing. Nom.	flū'men	Plur. flū'mi na	Sing. frī'gus Plur	. frī'go ra
Gen.	flū'mi n <b>is</b>	flū′mi n <b>um</b>	frī'go ris	frī'go rum
Dat.	flū′mi n <b>ī</b>	flū mi'n <b>i bus</b>	frī'go r <b>ī</b>	frī go'ri bus
Acc.	flū'men	flū'mi n <b>a</b>	frī'gus	frī'go ra
Voc.	flū'men	flū'mi na	frī'gus	frī'go ra
Abl.	flū'mi n <b>e</b>	flū mi'n <b>i bus</b>	frī'go re	frīgo'ri bus

#### 76.

1. A brave scout with a swift messenger was sent to the river Rhone. 2. A swift ship bore the faithful companions to the province. 3. The active scout has a swift boat. 4. The dangers of the many swift rivers of Gaul will warn the commander. 5. The faithful friends with the boat cross many swift rivers. 6. Swift ships will drive the enemy's fleets from rivers and seas. 7. The cold of Germany is bitter (active). 8. Many unfortunate men are not protected from the bitter cold. 9. Our legions are not desirous of cold and hunger. 10. Our forces [do] not praise the bitter cold weather of Germany. 11. The bitter cold weather of Germany [does] not assist our cause. 12. The soldiers are not encouraged by bitter cold weather.

# RECAPITULATION, WITH NEW NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Suggestion. — In-fert means he brings upon; fert, he brings, governs the accusative, and, in composition with in, upon, the dative (see 2, 10, 12).

### 77.

1. Est coniūrātiō nova in Galliā. 2. Calamitās māgna populō ¹ Rōmānō coniūrātiōne īnfertur. 3. Māgnitūdō coniūrātiōnis cīvitātem monēbat. 4. Lēgātus cum explōrātōre, comite dīgnō, in Galliam mīttēbātur. 5. Explōrātor cum lēgātō Genāvam venit. 6. Lēgātus fidēlis salūtī sociōrum studēbit et obsidēs postulābit. 7. Prīnceps ab Galliae nātiōnibus supplex Genāvam mīttitur. 8. Supplex indīgnus est perfuga et sēdem in Galliā habet. 9. Perfuga miser lēgātō erit nōtus et ad mortem dūcētur. 10. Hostēs cīvitātī calamitātem māgnam īnferunt. 11. Explōrātōrēs fortēs māgnitūdinem calamitātis dēmōnstrant. 12. Mors explōrātōrum prōvinciae calamitātēs novās īnfert. 13. Supplicēs omnēs multīs cum comitibus Rōmam veniēbant. 14. Supplicēs et comitēs sēdibus novīs in prōvinciā studēbant. 15. Cīvitās et supplicibus et comitibus sēdīs (-ēs) novās dabit. 16. Salūs supplicum et comitum cīvitātem dēlectat.

Direction. — Learn A. & G. : 1 228; Rule 23. H. : 1 386.

Decline  $ex\ pl\bar{o}\ r\bar{a}'tor$ , gen.  $ex\ pl\bar{o}\ r\bar{a}\ t\bar{o}'ris$ , like  $\bar{o}\ r\bar{a}'tor$  (Ex. 43);  $cn\ i\bar{u}-r\bar{a}'ti\ \bar{o}$ , gen.  $co\ i\bar{u}\ r\bar{a}'ti\ \bar{o}$  (is, like  $n\bar{a}'ti\ \bar{o}$  (Ex. 45);  $ca\ la'mi\ t\bar{a}s$ , gen.  $ca\ la-mi\ t\bar{a}'tis$ , like  $c\bar{i}'vi\ t\bar{a}s$  (Ex. 47);  $m\bar{a}\ gni\ t\bar{u}'d\bar{o}$ , gen.  $m\bar{a}\ gni\ t\bar{u}'di\ nis$ , like  $for\ ti\ t\bar{u}'d\bar{o}$  (Ex. 49); co'mes, gen.  $co'mi\ tis$ , like ob'ses (Ex. 55);  $sa'l\bar{u}s$ , gen.  $sa\ l\bar{u}'tis$ , like  $vir't\bar{u}s$  (Ex. 57);  $s\bar{e}'d\bar{e}s$ , gen.  $s\bar{e}'dis$ , like  $cae'd\bar{e}s$  (Ex. 61); mors, gen. mor'tis, like urbs (Ex. 61). Sup'plex has gen.  $sup'pli\ cis$ , dat.  $sup'pli\ c\bar{i}$ , etc.

# 78.

1. A great conspiracy brings war upon the province. 2. War is a misfortune of great magnitude. 3. Our faithful companions and allies are driven from Gaul by the misfortunes of war.

4. The state is warned by the magnitude of its misfortunes.
5. The state arms its brave cohorts and brings safety to its allies.
6. Leading men of Gaul were coming [as] suppliants to Rome.
7. The suppliants were desirous of safety and were giving hostages.
8. There was with the suppliants a wounded scout.
9. The unfortunate scout, a companion of the suppliants, was a robber.
10. The populace will demand the death of the robber.
11. The state is encouraged by the death of the conspiracy and the safety of our allies.

# RECAPITULATION, WITH NEW NOUNS, PROPER NAMES.

Suggestion. — Translate in with the name of a people, e.g. in Sēquanōs, into the country of the Sequani.

## 79.

1. Dumnorix,¹ frāter Divitiacī, Helvētiīs ² favēbit. 2. Helvētiī Dumnorigem lēgātum ad Caesarem mīttent. 3. Fīlia Orgetorigis Dumnorigī in mātrimōnium dabātur. 4. Caesar Divitiacō, fidēlī Dumnorigis frātrī, erat amīcus. 5. Orgetorix Dumnorigī persuādēbit. 6. Potestās ¹ Ariovistī māgna erat. 7. Germānī ā Sēquanīs in Galliam vocābantur. 8. Germānī in Sēquanōs ab Ariovistō dūcēbantur. 9. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, sēdīs (-ēs) multās in Belgīs habet. 10. Rhēnus Belgās ā Germānīs dīvidit. 11. Belgae suōs omnēs Rhēnum trānsdūcēbant et Germānīs bellum īnferēbant. 12. Agrī Haeduōrum ā Helvētiīs vastābantur. 13. Rhodanus prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. 14. Caesar multās legiōnēs fortīs (-ēs) in Haeduōs mīttet. 15. Nostrī omnēs Rhodanum trānsībunt et Genāvam, oppidum Allobrogum, venient. 16. Helvētiī Allobrogibus nōn persuādēbunt.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 175, 1 and 3. 276, 1 and 3, last sentence. 88, a.

H.: 1130, I., 1) and 2). 2441.

Orgeto	rix; stem Orgetorig-	Allobroges; stem Allobrog-	Divitiacus; stem Divitiaco-
Sing. Nom.	Or ge'to rix $(x = g - \mathbf{s})$	Plur. Al lo'bro gēs	Sing. Di vi ti'a cus
Gen.	Or ge to'ri gis	Al lo'bro gum	Di vi ti'a cī
Dat.	Or ge to'ri gi	Al lo bro'gi bus	Di vi ti'a c <b>ō</b>
Acc.	Or ge to'ri g <b>em</b>	Al lo'bro g <b>ēs</b>	Di vi ti'a c <b>um</b>
Voc.	Or ge'to rix	Al lo'bro g <b>ēs</b>	Di vi ti'a c <b>e</b>
Abl.	Or ge to'ri g <b>e</b>	Al lo bro'gi bus	Di vi ti'a cō

Like Or ge'to rix decline Dum'no rix, gen. Dum no'rigis. A rio vi'stus has gen.  $A rio vi'st\bar{o}$ , dat.  $A rio vi'st\bar{o}$ , etc. Bel'gae is declined like the plural of nau'ta. Decline the following adjectives:  $Hel v\bar{e}'tius$  and Hae'duus (like sau'cius, Ex. 25);  $Ger m\bar{a}'nus$  (like  $a m\bar{v}'cus$ , Ex. 29);  $S\bar{e}'qua nus$  (like cu'pi dus, Ex. 27). Their masc. plurals are used as nouns. Decline new nouns of the first, second, and third declensions whenever introduced.

#### 80.

1. Dumnorix was a brother of Divitiacus. 2. Dumnorix was unworthy of his brother Divitiacus. 3. The unworthy brother has a wife, the daughter of Orgetorix, from the Helvetii. 4. Orgetorix gives his daughter in marriage to Dumnorix. 5. Ours (our forces) are not assisted by Dumnorix. 6. A multitude of men was summoned by Orgetorix from the fields. 7. Ambassadors were sent to Ariovistus. 8. Faithful messengers will be sent to the state of the Haedui. 9. The Roman people call the Haedui brothers. 10. Caesar was leading all his [forces] across the Rhine into the territory of the Allobroges. 11. Our [forces] were led across the Rhine into the [country of the] Allobroges. 12. The Allobroges will cross the Rhone, the Germans the Rhine. 13. The Germans make war upon the Belgae. 14. The Rhine separates the Germans from the Helvetii.

## BELLUM HELVETIORUM.

Suggestion. — Com-mīttit for cum-mīttit means with-sends, sends to-gether; i.e. joins. Translate proclium commīttit, he joins battle. In fugam dat means he gives in flight; i.e. he puts to flight.

Orgetorix, princeps Helvētiorum, potestātis cupidus et agrorum novorum, coniūrātionem nobilitātis omnis facit. Coniūrātio cīvitātī accepta est et multitūdo hominum cum uxoribus et līberīs ad Rhodanum venit. Nostrī sociī fidēlēs sunt Rhodanō fīnitimī et periculum provinciae magnum est. Caesar Orgetorigem pro hoste habet et bellum parat. Nostrae legiones fortes amīcīs et sociis auxilium dant et hostes Rhodanum non transeunt. Helvētiī agrīs Rhodanō fīnitimīs expelluntur et ad fīnīs (-ēs) Sēquanorum veniunt. Sēguanī Helvētiīs non sunt īgnotī. Dumnorix est plēbī Sēquanōrum acceptus. Orgetorix est Dumnorigī amīcus, et fīlia Orgetorigis est Dumnorigis uxor. Dumnorix māgnam in cīvitāte suā potestātem habet et Orgetorigī et Helvētiīs favet. Sēguanī et Helvētiī coniūrātionem faciunt, suos in Haeduos, amīcos populi Romani, ducunt, agros sociorum nostrorum vastant. Caesar multīs cum legionibus fortibus Haeduīs auxilium fert et ad Ararim venit. Helvētii miseri sūos Ararim transdūcunt. Caesar proelium cum Helvētiīs commīttit et hostīs (-ēs) in fugam dat et hominēs multī pereunt. Pars Haeduōrum causae nostrae inimīca est et Caesarem non iuvat. Dumnorix est Haeduorum inimīcorum prīnceps. Caesar Dumnorigem monet, suos confirmat, proelium cum Helvētiīs commīttit, hostīs (-ēs) māgnā cum caede expellit. Multitūdo hostium in fugā perit et fīlia Orgetorigis et filius in Caesaris potestātem veniunt.

### THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS.

## 82.

Ariovistus, king of the Germans, has many friends in the territory of the Sequani. Desirous of power, the active king demands new fields from the Sequani. The states adjacent to the Sequani [do] not favor Ariovistus, and leading men come to Caesar and desire aid. Caesar sends ambassadors to Ariovistus, and demands the liberty and safety of all our allies. The ambassadors [do] not make peace, and Caesar leads his [forces] into the ter-

ritory of the Germans. There are in Gaul many forests well-known to the enemy. The magnitude of the forests brings danger to our cohorts. Caesar shows his soldiers the danger of flight and the glory of our cause, and encourages the cohorts. Caesar has a faithful legion of brave men. The faithful legion, worthy of its leader, assists Caesar and persuades the unfortunate cohorts. Caesar joins battle with the enemy and puts the soldiers of Ariovistus to flight. The wives of Ariovistus and a daughter perish in the flight. Ariovistus is driven from the territory of the Sequani, and crosses the Rhine. The Rhine separates Gaulfrom Germany.

## ADJECTIVES IN -X, ONE TERMINATION.

83.

1. Erat légātus audāx, phalanx audāx, praesidium audāx, in provincia. 2. Calamitas legati audācis, phalangis audācis, imperī audācis māgna erat. 3. Cīvitās lēgātō audācī, phalangī audācī, praesidiō audācī laudem dabit. 4. Caesar lēgātum audācem, phalangem audācem, praesidium audāx Romam mīttet. lēgātō audācī (-e), phalange audācī (-e), praesidiō audācī (-e) dīgnī sunt. 6. Sunt praefectī audācēs, cohortēs audācēs, auxilia audācia in Galliā. 7. Virtūs praefectorum audācium, cohortium audācium, auxiliorum audācium erat māgna. 8. Salūs praefectīs audācibus, cohortibus audācibus, auxiliīs audācibus est accepta. 9. Consul praefectos audācis (-ēs), cohortis (-ēs) audācis (-ēs), auxilia audācia vocābat. 10. Fuga praefectīs audācibus, cohortibus audācibus, auxiliīs audācibus est indīgna. 11. O audāx facinus et indīgnum! 12. Vulgus audācī (-ē) Sullae facinore dēlectātur. 13. Facinora audācia nātionem māgnam in perīculum saepe dūcunt. 14. Sulla calamitātem māgnam cīvitātī facinoribus suīs inferet.

Direction. — Read A. & G.: a 85 and Note. H.: a 156, foot-note 1,

#### audāx, daring; stem, audāc-

M. F. N. M. F. Sing, Nom.  $au'd\bar{a}x (x = c \cdot s)$ Plur. au dā'cēs au dā/ci a Gen. au'dā'cis au dā/ci um Dat. au'dā'cī au dā/ci bus Acc. au dā/cem au'dāx au dā'cīs (ēs) au dā/ci a Voc. au'dāx au dā/cēs an dā/ci a Abl. au dā/cī or au/dā ce au dā/ci bus

Decline fa'ci nus, gen. fa ci'no ris, like frī'gus (Ex. 75).

#### 84.

- 1. A daring citizen is elected commander of a new legion.
  2. The brave commander is sent into Gaul to our faithful allies.
- 2. The brave commander is sent into Gaul to our faithful allies.

  3. Men friendly to daring crime encourage a conspiracy.

  4. The
- well-known commander perishes by a daring crime. 5. The death of the daring commander was a great misfortune. 6. Enemies of the Roman people are the friends of conspiracy and crime.
- 7. Faithful citizens [do] not encourage crime. 8. The robbers of Italy are not unfriendly to daring crimes. 9. A multitude of daring crimes warn the citizens. 10. The daring crimes of robbers drive many people from the city. 11. Unworthy men were encouraging daring crimes. 12. Faithful citizens were not

encouraged by the daring crimes of unworthy men.

# ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES IN -NS, ONE TERMINATION.

## 85.

1. Erat tribūnus dīligēns, cohors dīligēns, agmen dīligēns in urbe. 2. Māgna tribūnī dīligentis, cohortis dīligentis, agminis dīligentis erat virtūs. 3. Cīvitās tribūnō dīligentī, cohortī dīligentī, agminī dīligentī fidēlis erat. 4. Nātiō tribūnum dīligentem, cohortem dīligentem, agmen dīligēns postulābat. 5. Ītalia tribūnō dīligentī (-e), cohorte dīligentī (-e), agmine dīligentī (-e) dīgna est.

6. Tribūnī dīligentēs, cohortēs dīligentēs, agmina dīligentiu cīvitātī sunt ūtilēs. 7. Comitēs tribūnōrum dīligentium, cohortum dīligentium, agminum dīligentium virī dīgnī sunt. 8. Plēbs tribūnīs dīligentibus, cohortibus dīligentibus, agminibus dīligentibus laudem māgnam dat. 9. Vulgus tribūnōs dīligentīs (-ēs), cohortēs dīligentīs (-ēs), agmina dīligentia laudat. 10. Lībertās ā tribūnīs dīligentibus, cohortibus dīligentibus, agminibus dīligentibus servābātur. 11. Homō potēns erat Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum. 12. Calamitās māgna Haeduīs ā rēge potentī (-e) īnferēbātur. 13. Auxilia nostra fortia sunt et potentia. 14. Cōnsul ducēs fidēlīs (-ēs) et potentīs (-ēs) dēliget. 15. Hostēs nostrī suīs cum ducibus multīs et potentibus pereunt.

#### potēns, powerful; stem, potent-

	M. F.	N.		M. F.		N.
Sing. Nom	. po'tēr	18	Plur.	poten'tēs		po ten'ti a
Gen.	po ter	'tis		po t	en't <b>i</b> u	ım
Dat.	poten	'tī		po t	en't <b>i l</b>	ous
Acc.	po ten'tem	po'tēns		po ten'tīs	(ēs)	po ten'ti a
Voc.	po'tēr	າຣ		po ten'tēs		po ten'tia
Abl.	poten'tī or	po ten'te		po t	en'ti l	ous

#### 86.

1. The Helvetii with their powerful chief were coming into the territory of the Haedui. 2. Orgetorix, the powerful chief, is diligent in war. 3. Orgetorix will give his daughter in marriage to Dumnorix, a powerful chief of the Sequani. 4. Dumnorix brings assistance to Orgetorix and encourages the diligent chief. 5. Caesar warns Dumnorix and his powerful ally. 6. Our brave legions were protecting the faithful Haedui. 7. Caesar joins battle with the allies, and many brave soldiers of the powerful chief perish. 8. Faithful consuls will demand [as] hostages the children of powerful chiefs. 9. Powerful nations were sending hostages to our diligent consuls. 10. Hostages were sent from the powerful nations adjacent to our allies. 11. The hostages were sent to Rome with faithful guards. 12. The state praises its diligent consuls.

# ADJECTIVES WITH OS-STEMS, TWO TERMINATIONS. COMPARATIVES.

Suggestion. — Comparatives change the stem-ending os to or, except in the nom., acc., and voc. neut. sing., where it becomes us.

### 87.

1. Consul melior, a nobilitas melior, melius cīvium genus a cīvitāte postulātur. 2. Prīncipēs consulis melioris, nobilitātis melioris. melioris cīvium generis erant cupidī. 3. Urbs consulī meliori, nobilitati meliori, meliori civium generi non erat inimica. 4. Plebs consulem meliorem, nobilitatem meliorem, melius civium genus postulābit. 5. Roma consule meliore (-i), nobilitāte meliore (-i), meliore (-i) civium genere est digna. 6. Consules meliores, munitiones meliores, meliora civium genera civitatem delectabunt. 7. Potestās consulum meliorum, mūnītionum meliorum, meliorum cīvium generum cīvitātem servābit. 8. Honor māgnus consulibus melioribus, mūnītionibus melioribus, melioribus cīvium generībus dabātur. 9. Orātorēs consules melioris (-es), munitiones meliōrīs (-ēs), meliōra cīvium genera postulābant. 10. Lībertās ā cōnsulibus melioribus, mūnītionibus melioribus, melioribus civium generibus servātur. 11. Legiō fidēlis ducis meliōris est cupida. 12. Legio ducem meliorem creat. 13. Auxilia habent galeas melioris, melioris equos nostri. 14. Galeae meliores legionibus melióribus dabantur.

Direction. — Read A. & G.: \*86,  $\alpha$  and b, last sentence. H.: \*154, Note 1, first sentence.

#### melior, better; stem melior- for melios-

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	me'li or	me'li us	Plur. me li ō'rés	me li ō'ra
Gen.	meli	ō'r <b>is</b>	me li ō'r	um
Dat.	me li ō'rī		me li ö'ri	bus
Acc.	me li ō'r <b>em</b>	me'li us	me li ō'rīs (ēs)	me li ō'rā
Voc.	me'li or	me'li us	me li ō'r <b>ēs</b>	me li ō'r <b>a</b>
Abl.	me li ō'rī or	me li ō're	me li ō'ri	bus

1. The slave of Claudius is a good man, the slave of Brutus is better. 2. Claudius favors the better slave. 3. Brutus will give Claudius the better slave. 4. The consul is desirous of a better decree. 5. A better decree is demanded from the council. 6. The council is worthy of a better decree. 7. Our active sailors were desirous of better boats. 8. Faithful engineers will prepare better boats. 9. Better boats will be given to our active sailors. 10. With the better boats the sailors will cross swift rivers. 11. The army of the allies is good, our auxiliaries [are] better. 12. Caesar calls the army good, the auxiliaries better. 13. Our commanders will favor the better auxiliaries. 14. The auxiliaries are worthy of better commanders.

## COMPARATIVE WITH QUAM, AND WITH THE ABLATIVE.

Suggestions.—1. In the study of comparative sentences the terms compared should first be accurately determined. In the sentences below, from 1 to 10, inclusive, both terms of the comparison have the same relation to similar words; e.g. in 1, Caesar is the subject of est (expressed), and Sulla is the subject of est (understood); in 7, nōbilitātem and plēbem are objects of habet (expressed or understood). In such sentences quam may be used, with both terms in the same case (nom. or acc.), or quam may be omitted and the last term be put in the ablative. See sentences 1, 2, 7, 9.

2. In sentence 11, the first term of the comparison is Caesar (expressed), the second, Caesar (understood), while legionum and auxiliorum are merely words having a common relation to cupidior (expressed or understood). In sentence 12, morte and libertate are not terms of comparison, but similar constructions, governed by dignior. In such sentences quam must be used.

3. Translate habet, regards; ducit, considers.

## 89.

Caesar¹ clārior est quam² Sulla.¹ Caesar est Sullā³ clārior.
 Supplex dīgnior erat quam perfuga. Supplex erat perfugā dīgnior.
 Divitiacus populō Rōmānō amīcior erit quam Ariovistus.
 Virtūs est potestāte melius.
 Legiōnēs auxiliīs dīgniōrēs

sunt. 6. Senātōrēs sociīs nostrīs amīciōrēs erant quam ōrātōrēs. 7. Caesar nōbilitātem amīciōrem quam plēbem habēbat. Caesar nōbilitātem amīciōrem plēbe habēbat. 8. Cōnsul lībertātem meliōrem quam pācem dūcit. 9. Auxilia tribūnōs clāriōrīs (-ēs) quam praefectōs habēbant. Auxilia tribūnōs clāriōrīs (-ēs) praefectīs habēbant. 10. Populus Rōmānus Haeduōs dīgniōrīs (-ēs) quam Helvētiōs dūcēbat. 11. Caesar legiōnum fortium erat cupidior quam auxiliōrum. 12. Latrō morte dīgnior erat quam lībertāte.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1247, a. 2208 and a. 3247; Rule 44. H.: 1417, 1. 2309, 1. 3417; Rule XXIII.

Like me'li or decline a mī'ci or, clā'ri or, cu pi'di or, and dī'gni or.

#### 90.

1. The daughter is better than the son. 2. The populace was more friendly than the nobility. 3. Our cause was more worthy than yours. 4. The territory of the Haedui is better than the fields of the Germans. 5. Our consuls are more illustrious than your leaders. 6. The Haedui were more friendly than the Germans. 7. The state regards valor [as] better than bravery. 8. The common people consider the senator more illustrious than the orator. 9. The orator regards fleets [as] better than auxiliary forces. 10. The nation considers the prisoners more worthy than the deserters. 11. Our auxiliaries were more useful to the Roman people than to our allies. 12. He was more faithful to the consul than to the state.

## COMPARATIVES (CONTINUED).

Suggestions.—1. Sentences 1-8, inclusive, have two forms. Translate the comparatives in sentences 9-12 by too or rather, with the positive.

2. In sentences 13 and 14 the terms of comparison do not sustain the same relation to the governing words; in 14, for instance, the first term, mīlitibus, is in the ablative, after ā, while the second, auxilia, is the subject of a proposition. In such sentences use quam and a verb with the second term as a subject.

1. Fīliae dīligentiōrēs fīliīs sunt. 2. Fīliī audāciōrēs sunt quam fīliae. 3. Tribūnī potentiōrēs praefectīs erant. 4. Legiōnēs fortiōrēs auxiliīs erant. 5. Cicerō nōtior Claudiō erat. 6. Caesar vir dīgnior erat quam Sulla. 7. Caesar legiōnēs ūtiliōrīs (-ēs) quam auxilia dūcit. 8. Cīvitās cōnsulem fidēliōrem tribūnō habet. 9. Nostrī audāciōrēs¹ erant. Mīles audācior erat. 10. Flūmen celerius est. Flūmina celeriōra sunt. 11. Dominī potentiōrēs sunt. Dominus potentior est. 12. Puer ācrior erat. Puerī ācriōrēs erant. 13. Populus Rōmānus cupidus est sociōrum fidēliōrum quam sunt Helvētīī. 14. Urbs ā mīlitibus fortiōribus, quam sunt auxilia, servābitur.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 193, a. H.: 1444 and 1.

Like me'li or decline au  $d\bar{a}'ci$  or,  $d\bar{\imath}$  li gen'ti or, fi  $d\bar{e}'li$  or, for'ti or,  $n\bar{o}'ti$  or, po ten'ti or, and  $\bar{u}$  ti'li or.

#### 92.

1. The sailor was more daring than the engineer. 2. The engineer is more diligent than the sailor. 3. The scouts were braver than the messengers. 4. The Haedui are more friendly than the Germans. 5. Peace is more acceptable to the populace than war. 6. Caesar regards the Helvetii more powerful than the Haedui. 7. The consul considers Italy more unfortunate than the province. 8. The nobility will be too powerful. The enemy will be too powerful. 9. The horse will be rather fleet (swift). The horses will be rather fleet. 10. The citizen was rather active. The citizens were rather active. 11. Rome will be full of soldiers more daring than the enemy. 12. The state will give the authority to a man more worthy than the consul.

#### SUPERLATIVES.

Suggestions.—1. Superlatives are declined like **bonus**, and are translated by English superlatives, or by the *positive* with *very*.

2. Similis may be followed by the genitive or dative.

1. Meus amīcus est vir clārus, tuus clārior, amīcus Sullae clārissimus. 2. Servus tuus erat fidēlis, meus fidēlior, servus Caesaris fidēlissimus. 3. Audāx erit custos, nuntius audācior, explorator audācissimus. 4. Celer² est Rhodanus, celerior Liger, Arar omnium celerrimus. 5. Claudius suī amīcī similis est. frātris similior, fīliī simillimus. 6. Līberī erant comitum suōrum simillimī.4 Oppida castrīs simillima sunt. 7. Ōrātor consulem potentissimum virum et dīgnissimum appellat. 8. Praefectus fortis erat vir dīligentissimus. 9. Faber clāssem celerrimam et ūtilissimam parābat. 10. Dominus servīs fidēlissimīs et amīcissimīs laudem māgnam dabat. 11. Consul mīlitēs audācissimos et fortissimos postulābat. 12. Cīvitās mīlitum audācissimorum et fortissimõrum cupida erat. 13. Cīvitās mīlitibus audācissimīs et fortissimīs erat dīgna. 14. Sunt in Helvētiorum cīvitāte flūmina multa et celerrima. 15. Nostrī mīlitēs ācerrimī flūmina celerrima saepe transeunt.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.:  $^{1}$ 89.  $^{2}$ 89, a.  $^{3}$ 89, b.  $^{4}$ 93, b, first sentence. H.:  $^{1}$ 162 and Note.  $^{2}$ 163 and 1.  $^{3}$ 163 and 2.  $^{4}$ 444 and 1.

## Audācissimus, most (very) daring; stem audācissimo-

M. F. N.

Sing. Nom. au dā cis'si m**us** au dā cis'si m**a** au dā cis'si m**um**Gen. au dā cis'si m**ī** au dā cis'si m**ae** au dā cis'si m**ī**, etc.

Continue like bo'nus; so decline all superlatives. Decline new adjectives in all degrees of comparison whenever introduced.

## 94.

1. The captive is worthy, the hostage more worthy, the exile most worthy. 2. The orator was powerful, the senator more powerful, the victor most powerful. 3. The wife will be diligent, the sister more diligent, the daughter most diligent. 4. The boy is active, the sailor more active, the engineer most active. 5. The common people are friendly, the council more

friendly, the garrison most friendly. 6. Our allies were brave, the nobility braver, the legion bravest. 7. The legion is worthy of a very illustrious and very faithful leader. 8. Our forces were faithful to their very worthy leader. 9. The Germans are very brave and very daring. 10. The state is desirous of very active and very diligent consuls. 11. Italy has very active and very diligent consuls. 12. The diligent engineer was preparing very useful ships. 13. The consul will give much money to the very brave and very faithful soldiers. 14. The daughter was most like her brother.

#### IRREGULAR COMPARISON

95.

1. Vir bonus est praefectus, tribūnus melior, consul optimus.
2. Homo malus erat supplex, latro pēior, perfuga pessimus.
3. Vir māgnus erit Claudius, Brūtus māior, Caesar māximus.
4. Honor servī est parvus, cālonis minor, captīvī minimus.
5. Tribūnus melior erat quam praefectus, consul quam tribūnus.
6. Cīvitās Caesarem meliorem Brūto dūcit.
7. Fīlia senātoris¹ est fēminārum² optima.
8. Ōrātor honore māximo dīgnus erat.
9. Minima erat copiārum nostrārum calamitās, hostium māxima.
10. Belgae sunt nātionibus māximīs fīnitimī.
11. Senātorēs populī Romānī honoribus māximīs sunt dīgnī.
12. Germānī agrorum optimorum cupidī sunt.
13. Sulla ad auxilium suum hominēs pessimos vocābit.
14. Hostēs castra minima habēbunt.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.:  $^{1}$ **214**,  $\alpha$ , 1.  $^{2}$ **216**, and  $\alpha$ , 2; Rule 16. H.:  $^{1}$ **396**, 1.  $^{2}$ **397** and 3; Rule XVI.

96.

1. The wife of the senator is a good woman, [his] sister better, [his] daughter best. 2. The power of the commander was great, [that] of the tribune greater, of the consul greatest. 3. The province is small, the state of the Helvetii less, [that] of the Allobroges the least. 4. Our phalanxes were good, our cohorts better,

our legions best. 5. The dangers of our cohorts will be small, [those] of our phalanxes less, of our legions least. 6. Our allies were very good soldiers. 7. The consul regards our allies very good soldiers. 8. Our brave soldiers are worthy of the greatest praise. 9. The territory of Gaul is adjacent to very large seas. 10. Sulla will give a very small part of Italy to worthy men. 11. Italy is desirous of the greatest glory.

#### IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

Suggestions.—1. Translate plūs honōris, more (of) honor (see 1). Proximus is followed by the dative or accusative in Caesar (see 3, 11, 12). Quam before superlatives makes them more emphatic (see 9 and 10); translate quam plūrimās, as many as possible; quam optimās, the best possible.

2. Such genitives as plūris, minōris, māgnī and parvī (4 and 5), are called *genitives of indefinite value*. In translating them, supply some such word as value or worth.

#### 97.

1. Honor multus conciliō, plūs¹ honōris² senātōribus, honor plūrimus cōnsulibus dabātur. 2. Cōnsul prior dux bonus nōn erat; omnium ducum prīmus est Caesar. 3. Caesar est quam lēgātus suus propior castra³ et proximus oppidum,³ Genāvam. 4. Šervus plūris⁴ erat quam scapha, scapha minōris quam equus. 5. Servus māgnī est, scapha parvī. 6. Cōnsul auxilia plūra postulābat. 7. Populus Rōmānus cōnsulēs priorīs (-ēs), virōs clārissimōs dūcēbat. 8. Honōrēs māximī cōnsulibus prioribus ā populō Rōmānō dabantur. 9. Cōnsulēs nāvīs (-ēs) quam plūrimās⁵ parābant et nautās quam optimōs dēligēbant. 10. Praefectus castra quam māxima faciēbat. 11. Hostēs sunt in agrīs proximīs prōvinciae. 12. Belgae proximī Germānīs sunt. 13. Tribūnī suōs ad proxima oppida dūcent.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup>86, b, first sentence. <sup>2</sup>216, a, 2 and 3. <sup>3</sup>234, e. <sup>4</sup>252 and a. <sup>6</sup>93 b, second sentence.

H.: <sup>1</sup>165, Note 1. <sup>2</sup>397 and 3. <sup>8</sup>433, I.,

Note 2. 4 405. 5 170, 2 (2).

Plūs,	more;	stem	plür-	for	plūs-

		M. F.	N.	м. ғ.	N.
Sing.	Nom.	north-references	plūs	Plur. plū'r <b>ēs</b>	plū'r <b>a</b>
	Gen.		plū'r <b>is</b>	plū'ri	um
	Dat.			plū'r <b>i</b>	bus
	Acc.		plūs	plū'r <b>īs</b> ( <b>ēs</b> )	plū'r <b>a</b>
	Voc.		plūs	plū'r <b>ēs</b>	plū'r <b>a</b>
	Abl.		plū're	plū'ri	bus

1. Much praise will be given to the cohorts, more (of) praise to the legions, most praise to our faithful commanders. former leader is a good commander, the new leader the first of soldiers. 3. The province is nearer Italy than the territory of the Allobroges, the Allobroges are nearest the Sequani. 4. Our fleet was of great [value], the fleet of the enemy of little [worth]. 5. Garrisons are of more [worth] than decrees, decrees of less [value] than a faithful populace. 6. The common people give more (of) praise to our soldiers than to our commanders. 7. The state is desirous of more allies and larger revenues. 8. The Roman people will prepare as many auxiliary [forces] as possible. 9. Caesar was arming as many legions as possible and was selecting the best possible leaders. 10. The great leaders are worthy of their former glory. 11. Of Roman soldiers, Caesar was, the first and greatest. 12. The Germans are nearest the Rhine and the Belgae.

# IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON (CONTINUED).

Suggestions. — 1. Forms from the positive  $\overline{\mathbf{inferus}}$  and  $\mathbf{superus}$  are used mostly as nouns.

<sup>2.</sup> Translate summus mons (collis), top of the mountain (hill); infimus collis (mons), foot of the hill (mountain); the ablatives magnitudine, virtute (see 1, 2, 14), in respect to, in; magis idoneus, maxime idoneus, etc., more suitable, most (very) suitable, etc.

<sup>3.</sup> Collis and mons are of the masculine gender.

1. Mons est magnitudine 1 superior. Summus (suprēmus) mons plēnus est mīlitum. 2. Collis est māgnitūdine inferior. İnfimus (*īmus*)<sup>2</sup> collis est in Helvētiōrum fīnibus. 3. Collis īnfimus magis 3 idoneus castris erat quam summus mons. 4. Pars collis est in Sēquanorum fīnibus, pars montis in Helvētiorum cīvitāte. 5. Cīvitās Allobrogum collī<sup>4</sup> et montī est proxima. 6. Nostrī ad collem, hostēs ad montem, castra faciēbant. 7. Erant sub īnfimō monte et summo in colli (-e) silvae maximae. 8. Montes Sequanorum sunt māiores et arduiores quam colles Allobrogum. 9. Fines Helvētiorum fluminum celerium, montium maximorum, collium arduōrum plēnae sunt. 10. Sēquanī montibus multīs et collibus sunt fīnitimī. 11. Helvētiī sēdīs (-ēs) ad a montīs (-ēs) et collīs (-ēs) arduissimos habent. 12. Sunt sub arduis montibus et summis in collibus hostes multi. 13. Summus collis non est arduissimus et castrīs māximē 3 idoneus est. 14. Consules hostīs (-es) multitūdine hominum superioris (-es), inferioris (-es) virtute habebant.

Direction. — Read A. & G.: a 258, c, 2, Note 1.

H.: a 433, I. ad (2).

Learn A. & G.: 1 253; Rule 53. 2 193; Rule 5. 889, d.

4 234 and α; Rule 28.

H.: 1 424 and Note 1; Rule XXIX. 2 440, 2,

Notes 1, 2. 8 169, 2; 170. 4 391 and I.;

Rule XIV.

## 100.

1. The consul is superior in power. 2. The highest safety of the state summons the consul to Rome. 3. The mountain is not inferior in magnitude. 4. The foot [of] the mountain was more suitable for a camp than the top [of] the hill. 5. The sea is very near the foot [of] the hill and the mountain. 6. Ours (our forces) have the foot [of] the mountain; the enemy, the top [of] the hill. 7. Our camp was protected by a mountain and a very rugged hill. 8. The tops [of] the hills and mountains are not suitable for a camp. 9. Faithful legions are the guards of our mountains and hills. 10. Ours (our forces) come to the mountains and hills of

the Sequani. 11. The enemy are driven from the mountains and hills into the territory of the Helvetii. 12. The Helvetii will summon as many auxiliaries as possible.

# IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON (CONTINUED).

Suggestions.—1. Senex and iuvenis are adjectives, with the comparatives senior and iunior, but they are mostly used as nouns. For their adjective use, see 1 and 2, below.

2. Invītus has no comparative; laetus has regular comparison. Translate the forms of these words in the sentences below as adverbs; e.g. invītus unwillingly; laetissimus, very gladly.

#### 101.

1. Exsul iuvenis est, obses iūnior¹ quam exsul. 2. Praefectus senex erat, tribūnus senior¹ quam praefectus. 3. Senex² invītus,³ iuvenis² invītussimus³ perfugam iuvābit. 4. Puer iter laetus,³ iuvenis laetior,³ senex laetissimus faciet. 5. Fortitūdō senis et virtūs iuvenis cīvitātī salūtem ferent. 6. Honor et senī et iuvenī est acceptissimus. 7. Concilium senem laude dīgniōrem quam iuvenem dūcēbat. 8. Facinus audāx sene et iuvene erat indīgnum. 9. Senēs laetī, iuvenēs nōn invītī, captīvō auxilium ferunt. 10. Cīvitās nōn invīta virtūtem iuvenum, fortitūdinem senum laudābit. 11. Laudēs cīvitātis et senibus et iuvenibus erunt acceptissimae. 12. Cīvitās ā senibus cōnfirmābātur, ā iuvenībus servābātur. 13. Cōnsul iuvenēs bellō magis idōneōs quam senēs dūcit. 14. Iuvenēs nostrī virtūte superiōrēs erunt, fortitūdine senēs.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.:  ${}^{1}$ **91**, c, first sentence.  ${}^{2}$ **188** and a.  ${}^{8}$ **191**. H.:  ${}^{1}$ **168**, 4.  ${}^{2}$ **62**, V. and foot-note 3.  ${}^{3}$ **443** and Note 1 (1).

#### iuvenis, a young man; stem iuveni-

M	(F	.)

	\ /		
Sing. Nom.	iu've n <b>is</b>	Plur.	iu've n <b>ēs</b>
Gen	iu've n <b>is</b>		iu've n <b>um</b>
Dat.	iu've nī		iu ve'ni bus
Acc.	iu've n <b>em</b>		iu've nīs (ēs)
Voc.	iu've nis		iu've n <b>ēs</b>
Abl.	iu've n <b>e</b>		iu ve/ni bus

#### senex, an old man; stem senec- and seni-

#### M. (F.)

Sing.	Nom.	se'nex (x = c-s)	Plur.	se'n <b>ēs</b>
	Gen.	se'nis		se'num
	Dat.	se'nī		se'ni bus
	Acc.	se'nem		se'n <b>ēs</b>
	Voc.	se'nex		se'n <b>ēs</b>
	Abl.	se'n <b>e</b>		se/ni bus

#### 102.

1. The sister of the senator is young, the senator younger than [his] sister. 2. The slave was old, the master older than the slave. 3. The wife of the orator will come gladly, the daughter more gladly. 4. The consul unwillingly, the state most unwillingly was preparing war. 5. The old [man] was a friend of the youth, the youth a companion of the old [man]. 6. The children were very friendly both to the youth and to the old [man]. 7. All the children will praise the youth and the old [man]. 8. The boys were warned by the youth and by the old [man]. 9. The companions of the young [men] and the friends of the old [men] will assist the nation very gladly. 10. The nation was very faithful both to its old [men] and to its young [men]. 11. The nation was arming its young [men] and protecting its old [men]. 12. Both young and old are not inferior in valor.

#### COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Suggestions.—1. Adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions are mostly compared like cupidē and bene (see 1 and 6); those

formed from adjectives of the third declension, like audācter, dīligenter, and fortiter (see 3, 4, and 5).

2. Ordo is of the masculine gender; arbor is feminine.

#### 103.

1. Cohors cupidē, phalanx cupidius, legio cupidissimē proelium commīttit. 2. Ītalia saepe,3 provincia saepius, Gallia saepissimē auxilium postulābat. 3. Sociī audācter, auxilia audācius, nostrī audācissimē fīnēs hostium vastābant. 4. Haeduī dīligenter, Helvētiī dīligentius, populus Romānus quam dīligentissimē bellum parābat. 5. Belgae fortiter, Haeduī fortius, nostrī fortissimē Germānīs bellum înferent. 6. Praefectus urbem bene, tribūnus melius, consul quam optimē servābit. 7. Est summo in colle ordo militum fortissimõrum. 8. Pars ordinis ducem māximē dēlectat. 9. Caesar ordinī mīlitum fidēlium auxilium acceptissimum dabat. 10. Ducēs ordinum nostrorum proelium fortissime committunt. 11. Milites multī et sauciī in ordinibus pereunt. 12. Est summo in colle arbor māxima. 13. Sunt ad arborem explorātorēs audācissimī. 14. Māgnitūdo arborum summo in monte minima erat. 15. Summus mons arboribus māgnīs minimē idoneus est. 16. Erat sub īnfimo monte ad arbores multas et magnas ager castris idoneus.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.: 1148 and a. 292. 3148, f. 4148 and b; 207; Rule 10.

H.: 1304 and H.2. 2306. 3306, 4. 4304, IV.; 551; Rule LXI.

## 104

1. A well-known commander bravely leads the company.
2. Ours (our forces) make the march very quickly. 3. The companies were very carefully prepared. 4. There was very near the foot of the hill a large tree. 5. Ours (our forces) were near the tree. 6. Guards were protecting the tree as carefully as possible.
7. There was in the top of the tree an active scout. 8. There were very many trees upon the hill. 9. Our companies will be protected from the enemy by the trees.

## NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION. MASCULINE GENDER.

Suggestion. — The case-ending of the nom. and voc. sing. is -us; gen. -ūs; dat. -uī(-ū); acc. -um; abl. -ū. The case-ending of the nom., acc., and voc. pl. is -ūs; gen. -uum; dat. and abl. -ibus (-ubus).

#### 105.

1. Senātus exercitum quam celerrimē parābat. 2. Pars exercitūs impetum in hostīs (-ēs) audācter facit. 3. Senātus impetuī (-ū) favet. 4. Prīncipēs senātūs exercitum laudābunt. 5. Exercitus senātum impetū audācissimō dēlectat. 6. Exercitus erit senātuī (-ū) fidēlissimus. 7. Cīvitās et exercitū et senātū quam dīligentissimē servābitur. 8. Laus exercituī(-ū) fortī dabātur. 9. Exercitūs impetūs multōs in hostīs (-ēs) ācriter facient. 10. Impetūs multī exercitūs hostium dīvidunt. 11. Hostēs impetībus exercituum nostrōrum in fugam dabantur. 12. Senātūs multī et clārissimī exercitībus nostrīs laudem dabant. 13. Honor et senātībus et exercitībus populī Rōmānī dabitur. 14. In senātībus senātōrēs multī impetībus audācibus favēbunt. 15. Nātiōnēs fīnitimae senātūs clārissimōs habent.

## senātus, senate; stem senātu-

м.

Sing. Nom.	se nā't <b>us</b>	Plur.	se nā't <b>ūs</b>
Gen.	se nā't <b>ūs</b>		se nā't <b>u um</b>
Dat.	se nā'tu ī (-ū)		se nā'ti bus
Acc.	se nā't <b>um</b>		se nā't <b>ūs</b>
Voc.	se nā't <b>us</b>		se nā't <b>ūs</b>
Abl.	se n $\bar{\mathbf{a}}'$ t $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$		se n $\bar{a}'$ ti bus

## impetus, attack; stem impetu-

M.

Sing. N	om.	im'pe t <b>us</b>	Plur.	im'pe t <b>ūs</b>
G	en.	im'pe t <b>ūs</b>		
D	at.	im pe'tuī (im'pe tū)		im pe'ti bus
A	.cc.	im'pe tum		im'pe t <b>ūs</b>
V	oc.	im'pe tus		im'pe t <b>ūs</b>
A	bl.	im'pe tū		im'pe ti bus

Like im'pe tus decline e xer'ci tus.

1. Both the army and the senate favor an attack. 2. The attack was worthy of the army and the senate. 3. The power of the senate and the bravery of the army were very great. 4. Our leaders will be friendly to the senate and faithful to the army. 5. Leading men were desirous of an attack and were encouraging both the senate and the army. 6. Our senates are worthy of their armies. 7. Our armies by swift attacks encourage our senates. 8. The valor of the armies and the power of the senates are our glory. 9. Leaders suitable for our armies were selected by illustrious senates. 10. Brave attacks will bring safety to our senates. 11. The danger of the state summons our armies to brave attacks. 12. The leaders of our armies are desirous of daring attacks. 13. Great praise will be given to the senates and armies of the Roman people.

## NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION (CONTINUED).

Suggestions.—1. **Domus** is of the feminine gender. **Cornū** is neuter, and its case-signs are nom., dat., acc., voc., and abl. sing. -**ū**; gen. -**ū** (-**ūs**); nom., acc., and voc. pl. -**ua**; gen. -**uum**; dat. and abl. -**ibus**.

- 2. In 9 and 10 translate domī, at home; domum, home; domō, from home.
- 3. Genāvae, Avaricī, Vesontiōnī (Vesontiōne), in 11, are called *locative* forms, and are to be translated at Geneva, at Avaricum, etc.

#### 107.

1. Domus mea māior domō (domū) tuā est. 2. Praefectus domūs māximae cupidus erat. 3. Domus lēgātī domuī (domō) praefectī est fīnitima. 4. Praefectus domum lēgātō dēligit. 5. Domūs prōvinciae domibus nostrīs simillimae sunt. 6. Urbs domuum (domōrum) māximārum plēna erat. 7. Domūs nostrae lēgātōrum domōs (domūs) servant. 8. Lēgātī domibus suīs multitūdine hostium expellēbantur. 9. Cōnsul domī³ erat, exsul domō¹ Rōmam² veniēbat. 10. Exsul domum² Rōmā mīttēbātur.

11. Captīvus Genāvae, obses Avaricī, senātor Vesontiōnī (Vesontiōne) erat. 12. Cornū dextrum māgnō in perīculō erit. 13. Caesar auxilium ā sinstrō cornū ad cornū dextrum mīttet. 14. Pars cornū (-ūs) dextrī in fugā erat. 15. Auxilium cornū dextrō dabātur. 16. Cornua exercitūs flūmine et colle servābuntur. 17. Ducēs cornuum virī clārissimī erant. 18. Legiōnēs fortēs cornībus auxilium ferēbant. 19. Hostēs cornībus virtūte legiōnum expellentur.

```
Direction. — Read A. & G.: *68; 69.

H.: *116 and 1; 118.

Learn A. & G.: *1258, a. *2258, b. *3258, c, 2, both sentences; 36, c; 40, a; 62; 70, g; Rule 57.

H.: *1412, H. 1. *2380, H. 2, 1). *3426, 2; 48, 4; 51, 8; 66, 4; 119, 1; Rule XXX.
```

#### domus, house; stem domu-

	F.		F.
Sing. Nom.	do'mus	Plur.	do'm <b>ūs</b>
Gen.	do'mūs (ī)		do'mu um (ō'rum)
Dat.	do'muī (ō)		do'mi bus
Acc.	do'm <b>um</b>		do'm <b>ōs</b> (ūs)
Voc.	do'mus		do'm <b>ūs</b>
Abl.	$do'm\mathbf{\bar{o}}\;(\mathbf{\bar{u}})$		do'm <b>i bus</b>

#### cornu, wing (of an army); stem cornu-

	N.			N.
Sing. No	m. cor'n <b>ū</b>	0	Plur.	cor'nu a
Ge	n. cor'nū	(ūs)		cor'nu um
Da	t. cor'nū			cor'ni bus
Ac	c. cor'nū			cor'nu a
Vo	c. cor'nū			cor'nu a
Ah	l. cor/nū			cor'ni bus

Hereafter decline all nouns of the fourth declension whenever introduced.

## 108.

1. The commander's house was smaller than my house. 2. A part of my house was protected by large trees. 3. The Mediterranean Sea is adjacent to my house. 4. Many large trees protect

my house. 5. The houses of the city were not like the houses of the province. 6. There is a multitude of houses in a large city. 7. The common people will regard our houses [as] very large. 8. In our houses are many faithful friends. 9. The wounded soldier will be sent home from Vesontio. 10. The scout was summoned from home and sent to Avaricum. 11. The sailor was at Geneva, the engineer at Vesontio. 12. The messenger was at home, the scout at Avaricum. 13. The left wing of the army is near the sea. 14. The commander was leading his cohort from the right to the left wing. 15. The leader of the left wing was wounded. 16. Assistance was very acceptable to the left wing. 17. The wings eagerly joined battle with the enemy. 18. The safety of the wings will encourage the army. 19. The auxiliaries are near the wings. 20. The army was protected by its wings.

## NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION. FEMININE

Suggestions.—1. The case-signs of this declension are sing., nom. -ēs; gen. -ēī; dat. -ēī; acc. -em; voc. -ēs; abl. -ē; plural, nom. -ēs; gen. -ērum; dat. -ēbus; acc. -ēs; voc. -ēs; abl. -ēbus. In the gen. and dat. sing. of rēs, i before ē is short by exception.

2. Diës is sometimes feminine in the singular. Diem ex dië dücit (see 4) means delays from day to day; res novae, new things, i.e. a revolution.

## 109.

1. Diēs\* lībertātis celerrimē veniet. 2. Vulgus diēī (diē) māximē cupidum est. 3. Nōbilitās laeta diēī (diē) honōrem māgnum dabit. 4. Cōnsul indīgnus lībertātī est inimīcus et diem ex diē dūcit. 5. Laetī lībertātis diēs vulgus cōnfirmābunt. 6. Omnēs diērum laetissimōrum sunt cupidī. 7. Cīvitās multīs lībertātis diēbus cupidē studēbit. 8. Bonī diēs lībertātis laetōs diēs appellābunt. 9. Bonī diēbus multīs sunt dīgnī. 10. Rēspublica māgnō in perīculō est. 11. Māgnum est reīpublicae perīculum. 12. Cīvēs ācrēs reīpublicae auxilium dabunt. 13. Cōpiae nostrae rempublicam fortiter servābunt. 14. Hostēs lībertātis rēpublicā expellē-

bantur. 15. Rēs novae cōpiās Rōmam vocābunt. 16. Virī multī rērum novārum sunt cupidī. 17. Nōbilitās rēbus novīs studēbat. 18. Prīncipēs cīvitātis rēs novās parābant. 19. Hominēs multī et indīgnī novīs in rēbus pereunt.

```
Direction. — Read A. & G.: a 72; 73; 74, c and d.
H.: a 120 and 1; 122, 1; 123.
```

rēs, thing: stem rēdies, day; stem die-M. and F. Sing. Nom. rēs (pu'bli ca) Plur. rēs (pu'bli cae) Sing. di'ēs Gen. re'ī (pu'bli cae) rē'rum (pu bli cā'rum) diē'ī (di'ē) rē'bus (pu'bli cīs) Dat. re'ī (pu'bli cae) di ē'ī (di'ē) Acc. rem (pu'bli cam) rēs (pu'bli cās) di/em Voc. rēs (pu'bli ca) rēs (pu'bli cae) di'ēs rē bus (pu'bli cīs) Abl. rē (pu/blicā) di/ē

The plural of  $di'\bar{e}s$  has nom.  $di'\bar{e}s$ , gen.  $di\;\bar{e}'rum$ , etc. Decline all nouns of the fifth declension whenever introduced.

#### 110.

1. The day is suitable for a journey (march). 2. Caesar will make a day's journey. 3. The journey is suitable for the day. 4. The enemy [do] not make an attack, they delay from day to day. 5. The days of peace were many and joyful. 6. The common people are desirous of joyful days. 7. The orator gives praise to the joyful days. 8. The good will call the days of peace, very joyful days. 9. The good are worthy of many (and) joyful days. 10. The commonwealth will demand faithful citizens. 11. The power of the commonwealth is very great. 12. The populace gives the commonwealth great praise. 13. All praise the commonwealth. 14. The populace is assisted by the commonwealth. 15. A revolution will bring danger to the nobility. 16. The friends of the revolution were summoned to Rome. 17. The leaders of our armies will favor a revolution. 18. The nobility will not demand a revolution. 19. New power will be given to the common people by the revolution.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. IS, EA, ID, SINGULAR NUMBER.

Suggestions.—1. Is, ea, id is a demonstrative, meaning that, this; e.g. Caesar tribūnos in eam cīvitātem mīttit, Caesar sends tribunes into this state.

- 2.  $\overline{\mathbf{E}}$ ius consulis in 2 means of this consul; e $\overline{\mathbf{i}}$  test $\overline{\mathbf{i}}$ , in 3, to this witness; and so on.
  - 3. Observe that the demonstrative usually precedes its noun.
  - 4. The paradigm of is is given under Exercise 113.

#### 111.

1. Is tribūnus et 'ea legiō et id praesidium laudābantur.
2. Auctōritās ēius cōnsulis, ēius legātiōnis, ēius concilī erat plēbī acceptior quam Caesarī.
3. Eī testī, eī fēminae, eī conciliō auctōritās dabātur.
4. Exercitus eum agrum, eam prōvinciam id flūmen trānsībat.
5. Eō diē, in eā urbe, in eō conciliō bellum parābātur.
6. Legiōnēs novae in eam partem Galliae mīttēbantur; ea rēs hostibus nōta erat.
7. Ad eum prīncipem Caesar lēgātiōnem mīttit; ēius lēgātiōnis Galba est dux.
8. Ēius reī¹ populus Rōmānus erat testis.
9. Id concilium plūs auctōritātis habēbit in Galliā quam² in eā urbe.
10. Testis eī lēgātō et eī lēgātiōnī persuādet.
11. Cōnsul est eō teste² melior.
12. Exercitus noster propior eam urbem erat quam Rōmam.
13. Id oppidum propius montī est quam Rōmae.
14. Senātus eō honōre dīgnior erat quam cōnsul.
15. Auctōritās senātūs plēbī acceptior erat quam cōnsulis.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.:  $^1$ 213, 1 and 2; 217; Rule 17.  $^2$ 247 and a; Rule 44.

H.:  $^1$ 396, II. and III.  $^2$ 417 and 1; Rule XXIII.

## 112.

1. The consul will give this embassy new authority. 2. The authority of this leader was more acceptable to our soldiers than (that of) Caesar. 3. That commander will have authority by a decree of the council; of this fact the Roman people will be a witness. 4. Caesar's army crosses that swift river; this fact is

known to the enemy. 5. This river is often crossed by our army. 6. To that ambassador the senate will give more authority than to the consul. 7. Caesar is a better commander than this consul. 8. This embassy is nearer to the city than to our camp. 9. Our authority was greater in Rome than in this city.

## IS, EA, ID, PLURAL NUMBER.

Suggestions. — 1. Is, ea, id means in the plural those, these.

2. Translate reliquus, in 8 and 9, the rest of; so, for such expressions as the rest of the soldiers, say, in Latin, not reliquī mīlitum, but reliquī mīlitēs.

### 113.

1.  $\overline{I}$  ( $e\overline{\imath}$ ) mīlitēs, eae mūuītiōnēs, ea oppida in nostrā potestāte sunt. 2. Auctōritās  $e\overline{o}rum$  cōnsulum,  $e\overline{a}rum$  cīvitātum,  $e\overline{o}rum$  conciliōrum erat māior quam populī Rōmānī. 3. Domus  $e\overline{\imath}s$  ( $\overline{\imath}s$ ) servīs,  $e\overline{\imath}s$  ( $\overline{\imath}s$ ) fīliābus,  $e\overline{\imath}s$  ( $\overline{\imath}s$ ) praesidiīs dabātur. 4. Hostēs  $e\overline{o}s$  praefectōs,  $e\overline{a}s$  cōpiās, ea praesidia terrent. 5. In  $e\overline{\imath}s$  ( $\overline{\imath}s$ ) agrīs et in  $e\overline{\imath}s$  ( $\overline{\imath}s$ ) urbibus et in  $e\overline{\imath}s$  ( $\overline{\imath}s$ ) oppidīs multī hostēs erant. 6.  $\overline{I}$  ( $\overline{\imath}s$ ) mīlitēs veniēbant et ēius reī causā erat perīculum. 7. Is cōnsul in castrīs hominēs fidēlīs (-ēs) habet; ex e $\overline{\imath}s$  ( $\overline{\imath}s$ ) hominibus lēgātum dēliget. 8. Eōrum mīlitum fugā  $reliquus^1$  exercitus terrētur. 9. Ob eam rem Caesar ad omnia ea oppida reliqua lēgātiōnēs mīttēbat. 10. Caesar māior est eō duce. Caesar māior est quam is dux.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1193; Rule 5. H.: 1440, 2, Notes 1 and 2.

	м.	F.	N.	м.	F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	is	e'a	id Pl	ur. ī(eī)	e'ae	e'a
Gen.	ē'ius	ē'ius	ē'ius	e ō'rum	eā'rum	e ō'rum
Dat.	e'ī	e'ī	e'ī	e'īs (īs)	e'īs (īs)	e'īs (īs)
Acc.	e'um	e'am	id	e'ōs	e'ās	e'a
Voc.						
Abl.	e'ō	e'ā	e'ō	e'īs (īs)	e'īs (īs)	e'īs (īs)

1. The enemy desire those fields, those provinces, those towns.
2. Caesar has many legions; of these he will send the largest to Rome.
3. These soldiers come from that town to our province and terrify the citizens.
4. The rest of the soldiers are worthy of these leaders and these decrees.
5. The towns of the allies are large; to these the consul will send the rest of the legions.
6. In these towns there were witnesses of these things; on this account Caesar sends ambassadors.
7. Practice giving in Latin: This man, these sailors, in those states, to (or for) this slave, of this commander, of those towns, to (or for) these witnesses, into that city, on account of these things, this fact, of that legion, to (or for) this embassy, with these auxiliary [forces], this decree, of these witnesses, in company with this witness.

## HĪC, HAEC, HŌC.

Suggestions. — 1. The demonstrative hīc, haec, hōc means this, and refers to a person or thing near at hand.

2. In the plural number, hīc has the case-endings of bonus with haec (not ha) in the nom. and acc, neut.

## 115.

1. Hīc exercitus, haec phalanx, hōc praesidium in servitūtem mīttēbātur. 2. Ducēs hūius exercitūs, hūius phalangis, hūius praesidī Rōmam iter facient. 3. Huic exercituī (-ū), huic phalangī, huic praesidiō Caesar persuādēbat. 4. Praefectus hunc exercitum, hanc nāvem (-im), hōc praesidium armābit. 5. Hōc honōre, hāc spē, hōc dēcrētō cōnsul mīlitēs ācrīs (-ēs) cōnfirmābit. 6. Nostrī hōc flūmen invītī trānsībant. 7. Hīc locus ab hoste passūs¹ sexcentōs² abest. 8. Īnfimus collis ab hāc urbe passūs multōs aberat. 9. Hōc flūmen multīs locīs³ trānsitur. 10. Hae silvae et haec flūmina in nostrā prōvinciā sunt. 11. Haec loca ā summō monte mīlia⁴ passuum ⁵ VI.6 (sex) absunt. 12. Nostrī ab hōc locō mīlia passuum octō aberant. 13. Multitūdō hostium ācrium omnia haec loca trānseunt. 14. Haec urbs Rōmae simillima est.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1257; Rule 36. 294, d. 3258, f, 1 and 2. 494, e and Note. 5216, a, 2. 694, c. H.: 1379; Rule IX. 2177. 3425, II. and 2. 4178. 5397 and 2. 6176.

	м.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	Plur. hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hū'ius	hū'ius	hū'ius	hō'rum	hā'rum	hō'rum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Voc.						
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

## 116.

1. The leader was giving helmets to this legion, to these auxiliary [forces], to this commander. 2. These citizens, these councils, these states have the greatest honors. 3. To this state, to this citizen, to this council the consul will give very great honors. 4. This place is in the hands of Romans. 5. Our soldiers very often cross these swift rivers. 6. These places are six miles distant from Rome. 7. There are many very swift rivers in this province. 8. The attack of these auxiliary [forces], of this cohort, of this leader, is more acceptable to our brave soldiers than to the enemy. 9. This legion is six hundred paces from the city. 10. These rivers are in many places known to the enemy. 11. For this reason the slave is more useful than this soldier. 12. This hope, to these places, of this cohort, of these states, in these places, to (or for) these leaders, in these cities, to (or for) this army, by means of this authority, to (or for) this witness, into this swift river, by this decree, in this place, this sea, of these decrees, into these provinces.

## ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD.

Suggestions.—1. Ille, illa, illud is a demonstrative, meaning that, youder. It differs in declension from bonus only in the forms given in sentences 1-5.

2. **Hīc**, *this*, refers to something near at hand; **ille**, *that*, to something more remote; e.g. *Hīc* locus est in prōvinciā nostrā, *ille* in vestrā, *This* place is in our province, *that* in yours.

#### 117.

1. Ille honor, illa glōria, illud imperium est Caesaris.¹ 2. Salūs illīus custōdis, illīus fēminae, illīus praesidī est in manibus meīs.
3. Illī mīlitī, illī cohortī, illī praesidiō honor dabātur. 4. Hōc lītus rēgem dēlectat, illud nōn. 5. Omnēs hominēs illud foedus prō facinore habēbunt. 6. Ob eam rem ducēs illīus exercitūs quam hūius fidēliōrēs erant. 7. Impetus hūius phalangis rēgī ūtilior erat quam illīus. 8. Hīc locus ā summō monte mīlia passuum VII. (septem) aberat, ille X. (decem). 9. Cōnsulēs potentēs huic iuvenī equum, galeam illī dant. 10. Latrō illā spē testīs (-ēs) reliquōs cōnfirmābit. 11. Hōc foedus ūtilius erit quam illud. 12. Hī ducēs illīs pēiōrēs sunt. 13. Cōnsul illī legiōnī meliōrem ducem quam huic dabit.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.: 1214, c. H.: 1401; Rule XVIII.

		М.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Sing. No	om.	il'le	il'la	il'lud	Plur.	il'lī	il'lae	il'la
G	en.	il lī'us	il lī′us	il lī'us		il lō'rum	illā'rum	il lō'rum
D	at.	il'lī	il'lī	il'1ī		il'līs	il'līs	il'līs
A	cc.	il/lum	il/lam	il'lud		il'lōs	il'lās	il'la
v	oc.							
A	bl.	il′1ō	il'lā	il′lō		il'līs	il′līs	il'līs

## 118.

1. With that treaty the commander will encourage the faithful soldiers. 2. On this account the senators were more friendly to this commander than to that. 3. This treaty was more useful to our soldiers than that. 4. This army will have more commanders than that. 5. The guards of yonder city were braver than [the guards] of this. 6. There are more swift ships on that shore than on this. 7. This shore is nearer to Italy than to Germany. 8. Our soldiers will be faithful to this very worthy leader. 9. On this account, the consul considers these soldiers braver than those.

10. Of this place, of those places, to (or for) that witness, by means of this authority, on these shores, those treaties, to (or for) the rest of the soldiers, of these embassies, of this very useful council, to that city, to those places, by means of that treaty, on this account.

## IS, HIC, AND ILLE AS SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

Suggestions. — 1. Is, hīc, and ille are used not only as adjective pronouns modifying nouns, but also alone as substantive pronouns; e.g. Huic persuādet Caesar, Caesar persuades him (this one).

2. Translate terra marique, in 7, by land and sea.

#### 119.

1. Eī lēgātionī Ariovistus respondet; iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātos mīttit. 2. Est flūmen idque multīs locīs vado trānsībātur. 3. Multī flūmen vadō trānsībant; in hīs Ariovistus erat. 4. Caesar mīlitēs acrīs (-ēs) in urbe habet; ex eīs (īs) Galbam ad hostīs (-ēs) mīttet. 5. Eōrum fēminae līberīque in servitūtem dūcēbantur; ēius reī populus Romānus erat testis. 6. Ab castrīs oppidum hostium abest mīlia passuum novem; id summā vī3 nostrī oppūgnant. 7. Ī (eī) urbīs (-ēs) nostrās terrā marīque ācriter oppūgnant. 8. Hunc Caesar prohibet ab eīs (īs) locīs. 9. Huic Ariovistus iterum iterumque respondēbat. 10. Multī illud flümen tränsībant; illos Caesar Romam mīttēbat. 11. Germānī erant fīnitimī; apud eos erat rēx Ariovistus. 12. Apud Helvētios nobilissimus erat Orgetorix; is coniūrātionem nobilitātis faciēbat. 13. Consul ob eam rem calones et custodes vocabat; hōs laudābat, monēbat illōs. 14. Eius bellī fēmina est causa; ea tribūnos mīlitum in eas cīvitātēs mīttit.

Direction.—Learn A. & G.: 156, a. 2258, g. 3248; Rule 46. H.: 1554, I., 2 and 3. 2 Rule XXV. 3419, III.; Rule XXIV., III.

## 120.

1. Caesar storms all those towns by land and sea, and keeps the force of the enemy from his own camp. 2. The Germans were adjacent; of them the noblest were sent to Caesar. 3. These states again were sending their chiefs as ambassadors to Rome; this was known to our soldiers. 4. The king's daughter is in Geneva; she will send a slave to Rome. 5. There is a bridge upon that river; to it the Germans send a large army. 6. This chief again and again responds to that commander and his soldiers. 7. Ariovistus keeps the force of the enemy from his camp all these days. 8. Among them are deserters and guards; these he will praise, those he will warn. 9. Caesar will choose for his camp a more suitable place than the top of a mountain. 10. Caesar sends to the city more captives than Sulla.

## IPSE, ISTE, TDEM.

Suggestion. — Iste, that, that of yours, is declined like ille. Ipse, self, is similarly declined, but has the form ipsum, nom. and acc. sing. neut. Idem, the same, is the demonstrative is plus the affix -dem; it has Idem for isdem, idem for iddem, and changes m to n before d, as in eundem for eumdem.

## 121.

1. Ipse¹ in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit. 2. Salūs tuae cohortis ipsīus² in manibus tuīs erat. 3. Multī plūs potestātis habēbant quam magistrātūs ipsī. 4. Iterum oppidum ipsum nostrī oppūgnābant terrā marīque. 5. Ipse erat Dumnorix, summā audāciā,³ māgnā apud plēbem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum. 6. Mercēs istīus⁴ facinoris mors erit. 7. Fēmina istī cālōnī miserō nōn respondēbit. 8. Ista mercēs exsulēs nōn cōnfirmat. 9. Magistrātūs ipsī, summā audāciā, māgnā grātiā, ad urbem contendunt. 10. Iste locus testibus miserīs datur, mercēs māgnī facinoris. 11. Exercitūs nostrī urbem ipsam āccerrimē oppūgnābunt. Idem facient sociī. 12. Caesar Rōmam contendēbat. Idem⁵ senātōrēs vocat. 13. Caesar et Ariovistus ad eundem locum contendent. 14. Magistrātūs omnēs eārundem mercēdum cupidī erant.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1195, g. 2195, f. 3251; Rule 51. 4102, c, last sentence. 5195, e.

H.: 1452. 2438 and 1. 3419, II.; Rule XXIV.,

II. 4450, 1, Note. 5451, 3.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sing. Nom. i'pse	i'psa	i'psum	Plur. i'psī	i'psae	i'psa
Gen. ipsī'us	i psī'us	i psī'us	i psō'rum	i psā'rum	i psō'rum
Dat. i'psī	i'psī	i'psī	i'psīs	i'psīs	i'psīs
Acc. i'psum	i'psam	i'psum	i'psōs	i'psās	i'psa
Voc. i'pse	i'psa	i'psum	i'psī	i'psae	i'psa
Abl. i'psō	i'psā	i'psō	i'psīs	i'psīs	i'psīs

	212.0	**	74.0
Sing. Nom.	ī'dem	e'a dem	i'dem
Gen.		(M. F. N.) ē ius'de	em
Dat.		(M. F. N.) e ī'dem	1
Acc.	e un'dem	e an'dem	i'dem
Voc.			-
Abl.	e ō'dem	e ā'dem	e ō'dem
	м.	F.	N.
Plur. Nom.	ī'dem (eī-)	e ae'dem	e'a dem
Gen.	e ō run'dem	e ā run'dem	e ō run'dem
Dat.	(M. F.	N.) e īs'dem or īs	'dem
Acc.	e ōs'dem	e ās'dem	e'a dem
Voc.			
Abl.	(M. F.	N.) e īs'dem or īs	s'dem

Like il'le, decline m. is'te, f. is'ta, n. is'tud.

M.

## 122.

1. The honor of the witness himself was in our hands. 2. The victor [does] not respond to that slave of yours. 3. The citizen was braver than the magistrate himself; for this reason he was [a man] of great influence among the populace. 4. These citizens [do] not praise that witness of yours; this is known to the magistrate himself. 5. The same leader, [a man] of great boldness and of the highest popularity among them, was hastening to Italy itself. 6. The decree itself will have great authority among those citizens of yours. 7. The orator by the same oration was

persuading the senate itself. 8. The rest of the soldiers actively storm the town and keep the force of the enemy from the city itself. 9. Caesar hastens into Gaul; he (the same) summons the council. 10. All the magistrates were desirous of the same good things.

## ALIUS, NULLUS, UNUS, ALTER.

Suggestion. — Alius, nūllus, ūnus, and alter have the gen. sing. in -īus (alter, in -ius) and the dat. sing. in -ī, like ille. Alius is also like ille in the nom. and acc. neut. sing.; e.g. in 5.

#### 123.

1. Exercitūs duo¹ in nostrīs fīnibus erant; mīlitēs ūnīus² audācēs erant, alterius³ nōn. 2. Nūllīus laus populō Rōmānō acceptior erit quam cōnsulis. 3. Galliae factiōnēs erant duae; hārum alterius prīncipātum habēbant Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. 4. Alterius factiōnis prīncipēs sunt Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. 5. Aliud iter Helvētiī habent nūllum. 6. Erant itinera dua: ūnum per Sēquanōs, alterum per prōvinciam nostram. 7. Cōnsul ūnī equum dabit, aliī domum, aliī servum; īdem summā apud plēbem grātiā⁴ est. 8. Audācia ūnīus magistrātūs laudābātur, auctōritās alterius. 9. Aliī vim hostium ab hīs locīs, aliī ab illīs prohibent. 10. Plūs honōris illī magistrātuī dabātur quam cōnsulī ipsī. 11. Tribūnus melior erat quam praefectus. 12. Fīlia ēius senātōris erat fēminārum optima. 13. Cīvitās istōs perfugās hominēs pessimōs habēbat.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 194, b. 283 (commit list). 3203. 4 Rule 51. H.: 1175. 2151 and 1 (commit list). 3459. 4 Rule XXIV. II.

	м.	• F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	ū'n <b>us</b>	ū'na .	$\bar{\mathrm{u}}'\mathrm{n}\mathbf{u}\mathbf{m}$
Gen.		(M. F. N.) ū n <b>ī'us</b>	
Dat.		(M. F. N.) ū'nī	
Acc.	$\bar{\mathrm{u}}'\mathrm{n}\mathbf{u}\mathbf{m}$	ū′n <b>am</b>	ū'n <b>um</b>
Voc.			
Abl.	$\bar{\mathrm{u}}'\mathrm{n}oldsymbol{\bar{o}}$	ū'n <b>ā</b>	$\bar{\mathrm{u}}'\mathrm{n}oldsymbol{\bar{o}}$

Complete the declension like that of bo'nus, Lesson 23.

	м.	F.	N.
Plur. Nom.	du'o	du'ae	du'o
Gen.	du <b>ō'rum</b>	du <b>ā'rum</b>	du <b>ō</b> /rum
Dat.	du <b>ō'bus</b>	du <b>ā'bus</b>	du <b>ō'bus</b>
Acc.	du'ōs (duo)	du' <b>ās</b>	du'o
Voc.			
Abl.	du ō'bus	du <b>ā'bus</b>	du ō'bus

Du'o has no singular.

a'li us, oth	a'li us, other.		al'ter, the other.		
м.	F.	N.	м.	F.	N.
Sing. Nom. a'li us	a'li å	a'li <b>ud</b>	Sing. al'ter	al'te ra	al'te rum
Gen. (M. F. N.)	a lī'us		(M. F. N.)	al te'ri us	
Dat. (M. F. N.)	a'li <b>ī</b>		(M. F. N.)	al'te r <b>ī</b>	
Acc. a'lium	a'li <b>am</b>	a'li <b>ud</b>	al'te rum	al'te ram	al'te rum
Voc.					
Abl. a'liō	a'li <b>ā</b>	$a'$ li $ar{o}$	$al'te r\bar{o}$	al'te rā	al'te rō

Complete the declension like that of sau'cius, Exercise 25.

Complete the declension like that of  $cu'pi\ dus$ , Exercise 27.

## 124.

1. There were two parties; the leader of one was known to the magistrates, [the leader] of the other [was] not. 2. To no citizen was more authority given than to Dumnorix. 3. There were two exiles in the camp; one was more friendly than the other. 4. The popularity of no friend is dearer to the consul than the liberty of the state itself. 5. To one of these daring men the leader gives a horse, to another a helmet, to another a slave. 6. Some will quickly storm this town, others that. 7. The approach of this one daring youth terrifies the magistrates. 8. Again this consul, a man of great boldness, was hastening to the city. 9. The leaders of one faction were soldiers, of the other, citizens. 10. The same man, of the same magistrates, to this one place, of the same rewards, of the state itself, to (or for) the rest of the citizens, of the other consul, to another city, in company with the king himself, of the magistrate alone.

## THE REFLEXIVE SUI.

Suggestions. — 1. Reflexives refer to the subject of the sentence. Suī, of himself (herself, itself), is the reflexive of the third person; e.g. Caesar equitātum omnem ante sē mīttit, Caesar sends all the cavalry before him (self).

2. Distinguish carefully **suī**, referring to the subject of the sentence, and **is**, **hīc**, **ille**, referring to some other person or thing. See 9 and 12. Distinguish **suī** from the genitive of the adjective **suus**.

3. The character  $\underline{\smile}$  signifies that the vowel over which it is placed — e.g. sibi in 2—is common in quantity. See page 14, 3 (under quantity).

#### 125.

1. Caesar māgnō suī¹ (gen. sing.) cum perīculō Rōmam contendet. 2. Vir bonus multa faciet nōn sibǐ (dat. sing.) sed aliīs.

3. Caesar sē nōn laudat, sed alterum. 4. Cicerō ā sē et ab aliīs laudābātur. 5. Nātiōnēs māgnō suī cum perīculō bellum gerunt.

6. Omnēs hominēs sibǐ ūtilēs sunt. 7. Hī omnēs sē victōrēs appellant. 8. Germānī et ā sē et ā populō Rōmānō fortēs appellantur. 9. Caesar ipse quam māximīs² itineribus ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mīttit. 10. Orgetorix Dumnorigī persuādet eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. 11. Helvētīī in Haeduōrum fīnēs veniunt eōrumque agrōs vastant. 12. Haeduī sē suaque ab eīs (īs) nōn dēfendunt. 13. Caesar cum Germānīs audācter bellum gerit. 14. Omnis mīles comitēs trēs³ sēcum⁴ habēbit.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1196; 217; Rule 7. 293, b, last sentence. 394, c. 499, e.

H.: <sup>1</sup>396, III.; 448; 449; Rule XXXV. <sup>2</sup>170, 2, (2). <sup>8</sup>175. <sup>4</sup>184, 6.

su'I (nom. and voc. wanting).

Gen. (both numbers), su'ī, of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves. Dat. si'bī. to to 66 to Acc. sē (sē'sē), Abl. sē (sē'sē), by 66 by by bv

For the Reflexive Possessive Pronoun su'us, see Lesson 31.

#### tres. three.

Nom. m. f. trēs, n. tri'a; Gen. m. f. n. tri'um; Dat. and Abl. m. f. n. tri'bus; Acc. m. f. trēs (trīs), n. tri'a.

1. Caesar makes himself commander of the soldiers and carries on war with the Gauls. 2. Good men do not praise themselves. 3. The master, with great danger to himself, boldly defends his slaves and their children; for this reason he has great popularity among them. 4. Sulla will hasten by the longest marches possible to his own city and send all the slaves before him. 5. Every soldier was arming himself. 6. The populace gave themselves and their property to the consuls. 7. The guard himself, a man of great boldness, makes himself a helmet. 8. Every soldier will have a helmet with him. 9. Our men hasten to the territory of the Helvetii, and carry on war with them. 10. The Haedui boldly defend themselves and their property from the Helvetii. 11. The people will give the consul his property and defend their own.

## THE RELATIVE, QUI, QUAE, QUOD, WHO, WHICH.

Suggestion. — The paradigm of Quī is given under Exercise 129.

## 127.

1. Magistrātus,  $qu\bar{u}^1$  erat in castrīs nostrīs, est vir māgnae virtūtis; fēmina,  $quae^2$  erat causa hūius bellī, non laudātur; oppidum, quod est propius lacum, Genāva appellātur. 2. Magistrātus,  $c\bar{u}ius$  auctoritās est māgna; urbs,  $c\bar{u}ius$  cīvēs sunt ūtilēs; praesidium,  $c\bar{u}ius$  dux est fortis, in hōc dēcrētō laudābātur. 3. Magistrātus  $cu\bar{i}$ , factiō  $cu\bar{i}$ , praesidium  $cu\bar{i}$  haec auctoritās nunc datur, māgnō in perīculō est. 4. Is quem, ea quam, id quod omnēs cīvēs bonī nunc laudant, ā consule laudātur. 5. Is ā  $qu\bar{o}$ , legio ā  $qu\bar{o}$ , concilium ā  $qu\bar{o}$  cīvitās nunc servātur, māgnō in honōre est. 6. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, cūius pater ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātur. 7. Eā legione quam sēcum habet, mūrum in altitūdinem pedum³ sēdecim perdūcit. 8. Lacus in quem flūmen īnfluit, in fīnitimā provinciā est. 9. Flūmen est

Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit. 10. Caesar, ā lacū quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit ad montem quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mūrum perdūcit. 11. Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mīttit; in quā lēgātiōne est prōcōnsul. 12. Caesar castra movēbit ad eum locum in quō locō 4 Germānī sunt. 13. Potestās cuī cōnsul bonus studet in manibus populī Rōmānī est. 14. Locus in quō Caesar bellum gerit ā castrīs nostrīs mīlia passuum V (quinque) abest.

DIRECTION.—Learn A. & G.:  ${}^{1}$ **197**, 5 (coarse print).  ${}^{2}$ **198**; Rule 3,  ${}^{3}$ **215**, b; **257**, a.  ${}^{4}$ **200** and a. H.:  ${}^{1}$ **187**.  ${}^{2}$ **445**, Note and 1.  ${}^{3}$ **396**, V.; **419**, III. 2. 1).  ${}^{4}$ **445**, 8.

## 128.

1. The lake which flows into the river Rhone is called Lemannus. 2. The slave to whom Brutus was giving freedom is a man of great boldness. 3. The treaty which the ambassadors are making is praised by many citizens. 4. The wall which Caesar is constructing is sixteen feet in height; it is six miles distant from the lake. 5. The sea whose shores are in Italy is called "the great sea." 6. This woman, who praises herself, is not praised by others. 7. The legion with which Caesar is constructing the wall is equipped with large helmets. 8. That place in which our soldiers were, was protected by a wall sixteen feet in height. 9. The wall which divides their province from ours is six feet in height.

## QUI, QUAE, QUOD, PLURAL NUMBER.

## 129.

1. Praefectī quī, legiōnēs quae, auxilia quae in hōc locō bellum gerēbant, ā nōbilibus laudābantur. 2. Cīvēs quōrum agrī ā Germānīs vastābuntur, audācissimē bellum gerent; nātiōnēs quārum oppida oppūgnābuntur pācem facient; auxilia quōrum equī hōc flūmen trānsībunt, in metū māgnō erunt. 3. Senātōrēs quibus,

fēminae quibus, concilia quibus hoc dēcrētum dēmonstrābātur, ad urbem contendēbant. 4. Agrī quōs, provinciae quās, flūmina quae nostrī trānseunt, Caesaris sunt. 5. Agrī in quibus, urbēs in quibus, oppida in quibus mīlitēs castra facient, in nostrā provinciā sunt. 6. Allobrogës, qui trans Rhodanum possessiones habent, ad Caesarem veniunt. 7. Partem unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam (eī, ī) quī ipsorum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. 8. Hostēs prohibentur possessionibus quās sociī habent. 9. Flūmina quae nostrī trānsībant in fīnibus Galliae sunt. 10. Fēminae quique ad bellum inūtilēs sunt, in ūno loco conlocantur. 11. Haeduī Boios suīs in fīnibus conlocant; quibus illī agrōs dant. 12. Hostēs ad eum locum veniunt; quōrum pars castra movet, pars in nostrōs impetum facit. 13. Lingua Rōmānorum ūtilis est. 14. Inter fīnēs Helvētiorum et Allobrogum, quī sunt sociī nostrī, Rhodanus fluit, isque multīs locīs vadō trānsitur. 15. Flümen est Rhodanus quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum fluit.

#### quī, who.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sing. Nom	. quī	quae	quod	Plur. quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cū'ius	cū'ius	cū'ius	quō/rum	quā'rum	quō'rum
Dat.	cuī	cuī	cuī	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Voc.						
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus

# 130.

1. The soldiers whose attack was delighting Caesar are [those] of the third legion. 2. The fields which our commanders desire are in the enemy's country and are six miles from our camp. 3. They who inhabit this territory are called Germans in our language. 4. This is the boundary of the places which our citizens inhabit. 5. Those nations which were bravely protecting their possessions in Gaul are our allies. 6. A third part of the cavalry is placed in the territory which is [the territory] of the Aedui. 7. The allies with whom Caesar is coming to Rome are terrified by the attack of the enemy. 8. The councils whose decrees are

in our hands will be praised by our citizens. 9. The people, who in their own language are called Celts, are placed in the province which is called Gaul. 10. The river which flows between the territory of the Helvetii and the Allobroges is called the Rhone.

# THE INTERROGATIVES, QUIS AND QUĪ, NE, NONNE, NUM.

Suggestion. — Praeest is to be translated is at the head of, is in charge of; praeficit (fut. praeficiet), places at the head of, places in charge of.

#### 131.

1. Quis¹ apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus erat? Orgetorix erat apud Helvētios nobilissimus. 2. Cūius pater ā senātū populī Romānī amīcus appellābātur? 3. Cūi in eo itinere persuādēbat Orgetorix? Orgetorix persuādēbat Castico. 4. Quō itinere Helvētiī domō exeunt? Eō itinere quod per Sēquanōs dūcit. 5. Quid habet Caesar in manibus? 6. Cuī mūnītiōnī² Caesar Labiënum praeficit? Eī mūnītionī quae est inter lacum et montem. 7. Quis ess mūnītionibus 2 quas Caesar nunc habet praeerat? 8. Quod oppidum in potestāte rēgis nostrī est? 9. Dūcuntne<sup>3</sup> Helvētiī suās copiās in Sēquanorum fīnēs? 10. Nonne4 est vir acceptissimus qui hanc urbem servat? Is acceptissimus est. 11. Num<sup>5</sup> Caesar eos laudat qui agros populi Romani vastabant? Caesar non istos laudat. 12. Quid illī simile bello est? 13. Num Caesar lēgātum praeficiet eīs mīlitibus quōs sēcum habet? 14. Nonne Labienus illī exercituī praeest quī in nostrā provincia est?

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.:  $^1$ **104**, a; **210**, e.  $^2$ **228**; Rule 23.  $^3$ **210**, a; Rule 11.  $^4$ **210**, c, first sentence.  $^5$ **210**, c, second sentence; Rule 12. H.:  $^1$ **188**, II. and 1; **351** and 1.  $^2$ **386**.  $^3$ **351**, 1, Note 1.  $^4$ **351**, 1, Note 2.  $^5$ **351**, 1, Note 3.

Quis, who? which? any (used substantively).

. M. F. N. M. F. N. Sing. Nom. quis, quae, quid; Acc. quem, quam, quid.

Complete the paradigm with the remaining forms like those of  ${\bf qu\bar{i}}$ , Exercise 129.

Quī, which ? what ? any (used adjectively), is declined like the relative quī.

#### 132.

1. Who was the bravest leader in our army? 2. What reward will Caesar give to these magistrates? 3. Is Rome larger than all Italy? 4. Was not the commander who is in Gaul in charge of that town? 5. Is not Caesar the greatest of our generals? 6. What is better than virtue? 7. What fortification will be more useful than that which Labienus is in charge of? 8. What treaty have the good with those men? 9. What citizens were most acceptable to the faithful consul?

#### THE DEPARTURE OF THE HELVETIANS.

Suggestion.—This exercise and the following may well be read in connection with the study of a map.

#### PART FIRST.

The Helvetii are superior to the rest of the Gauls in valor. For this reason they desire a larger territory than that which they now inhabit.

There are two roads which lead from the territory of the Helvetii; the one through the Sequani, the other through our province. That is difficult; this is easy. The Helvetii choose the way through our province.

Between the territory of the Helvetii and the Allobroges, who inhabit our province, flows the Rhone, and this is crossed in many places by fords. At Geneva, a city of the Allobroges, which is near the territory of the Helvetii, there is a bridge.

All these facts are known to Caesar. He leads an army from Rome and hastens to Geneva by the longest marches possible. He destroys the bridge which is near Geneva. His coming is known to the Helvetii; and they send ambassadors to him, the noblest of the state. Caesar responds to them. He does not favor them; and he does not grant them a way through our province. Caesar himself, with the (that) legion which he has with him, constructs a wall sixteen feet in height, from lake Lemannus, which flows into the river Rhone, to the mountain which separates the territory of the Sequani from the Helvetii.

# PROFECTIO HELVETIORUM.

PARS SECUNDA.

Est alterum per Sēquanōs iter. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mīttunt et ab eō auxilium postulant. Is māgnā apud Sēquanōs grātiā est et Helvētiīs est amīcus. Is Sēquanīs persuādet. Illī foedus cum Helvētiīs faciunt, et itinere eōs nōn prohibent.

Māgnum est perīculum provinciae nostrae. Ob eam causam Caesar eī mūnītionī, quam ille habet, Labienum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque legionēs conscrībit, et trēs ē castrīs ēdūcit, et in Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legionibus contendit.

Helvētiī per fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūcunt et in Haeduōrum fīnēs perveniunt eōrumque agrōs vastant. Haeduī sē suaque ab eīs nōn dēfendunt. Paene in cōnspectū exercitūs Rōmānī, agrī eōrum vastantur, līberī in servitūtem abdūcuntur, oppida expūgnantur. Haeduī Ambarrī, fīnitimī Haeduōrum, nōn faeile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibent. Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum possessiōnēs habent, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt.

Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte. Id Helvētiī trānseunt. Trēs jam partēs copiārum Helvētiōrum trāns id flūmen sunt. Quarta pars citrā flūmen Ararim reliqua est. Caesar cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs exit et ad eam partem pervenit quae citrā flūmen est. Māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī fugā sēse in proximās silvās recipiunt.

Caesar pontem in Arare facit atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad eum mīttunt.

# VERBS.

# SUM, I AM, PRESENT INDICATIVE. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS EGO AND $T\overline{U}$ . SIMPLE CONDITIONS.

Suggestions.—1. The personal pronoun as subject of a verb is not expressed in Latin unless it is emphatic: sum means I am; es, thou art; sum homō, I am a man; ego sum cōnsul, I am consul.

- 2. There is no personal pronoun of the third person, he, she, it, in Latin; but the demonstratives is and ille are sometimes used.
- 3. The declension of ego and  $t\bar{u}$  is contained in sentences 10-19. Ego has no vocative; the vocative of  $t\bar{u}$  is like the nominative in both singular and plural.
- 4. In the conditional sentence, Sī ades, bene est, if you are here, it is well, sī ades is called the Protasis or Condition, bene est the Apodosis or Conclusion.
- 5. In the accompanying paradigm, and others like it, the English auxiliaries in parenthesis are to be used in translation and thoroughly committed to memory in connection with the corresponding Latin forms. The first sentence, sī adsum, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī sum, is, therefore, to be translated, if I am here, I am of great service to our forces. For the construction of nostrīs and ūsuī, see A. & G., 233, a; Rule 27. H., 390, 1; Rule XIII.

Sī (am) adsum, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (am) sum.

Sī (are) ades, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (are) es.

Sī (is) adest, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (is) est.

Sī (are) adsumus, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (are) sumus.

Sī (are) adestis, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (are) estis.

Sī (are) adsunt, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (are) sunt.

6. The apodosis of the second sentence in all Latin Exercises from 133 to 149 is to be inflected in connection with the rest of the sentence; e.g. (2, below) Sī adest, parātus sum; sī adest, parātus es, etc.

# 133.

1. (Ego) sum, (tū) es, (is) est; (nōs) sumus, (vōs) estis, (ī, eī) sunt. 2. Sī¹adest,² parātus sum.² 3. Rērum novārum cupidus es.

4. In exercitū Rōmānō mīles sum. 5. Tū animō māgnō fortīque es. 6. Ille est vir māgnae virtūtis. 7. Aditū Caesaris miserī sumus. 8. Illī sunt mīlitēs quōs auxilī causā lēgātus sēcum habet. 9. Ēius exercitūs praefectī estis. 10. Ego graviōris aetātis sum quam tū. 11. Tū meī bolītus es, ego tuī nōn. 12. Nōnne aditus prīncipis et mihī et tibī acceptus est? 13. Prīnceps mē laudat, tē nōn. 14. Lēgātiō ā mē mīttitur, nōn ā tē. 15. Nōs hūius bellī causa sumus, vōs illīus. 16. Ūnus nostrūm in vestrīs manibus est, ūnus vostrūm in nostrīs. 17. Lēgātus et nōbīs et vōbīs persuādet. 18. Cōnsul nōs monet, laudat vōs. 19. Phalanx ā nōbīs armātur, ā vōbīs in bellum mīttitur. 20. Nōs vostrī (vestrī) oblītī nōn sumus.

DIRECTION.—Learn A. & G.:  ${}^{1}$  304, Note, a and c, first clause.  ${}^{2}$  305, a,  ${}^{1}$  and example.  ${}^{3}$  218, a and Rule 18.  ${}^{4}$  99, a and b; 194 and b; Rule 6.  ${}^{5}$  99, c; 216, 5, Objective Genitive; 217.

H.: <sup>1</sup>506. <sup>2</sup>507, I. <sup>3</sup>399, I., 1, 2 and 3. <sup>4</sup>446, Note 3. <sup>5</sup>396, III.; 399 and Note.

		ego, I.		$\mathbf{t}ar{\mathbf{u}}, you.$
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	e'go	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	me'ī	no'strūm (strī)	tu'ī	vo'strūm (strī), ve'strūm (strī)
Dat.	mi'hī	nō'bīs	ti'bĬ	vō'bīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs.
Voc.			tū	vōs
Abl.	mē	nō'bīs	tē	vō'bīs

#### adsum, am here.

Sing.	1.	ad'sum	Plur.	1.	ad'su mus
	2.	ad'es		2.	ad es'tis
	3.	ad'est		3.	ad'sunt

Suggestion.—The protasis of the second sentence in all English Exercises from 134 to 152 is to be inflected in place; e.g. (2, below) If I am in charge of the army, it is well; if you are in charge of the army, it is well, etc.

#### 134.

1. I am not forgetful of these citizens, who desire liberty.
2. If I am in charge of the army, it is well. 3. We are of greater age than you. 4. You (sing.) are in Rome, Italy's greatest city. 5. You are not desirous of a revolution. 6. The approach of this army is more acceptable to me than to you. 7. These ambassadors respond to us, those to you. 8. For this reason they are forgetful both of us and of you. 9. The magistrate places me in charge of this, you in charge of that, fortification. 10. One of you is a man of great boldness, the other [is] not. 11. The enemy are eight miles distant from us, twelve miles from you. 12. The lieutenant is praised by me, warned by you.

#### SUM, IMPERFECT INDICATIVE. SIMPLE CONDITIONS.

Suggestions. — 1. Eram means I was; eras, thou wast (you were), etc.

2. Sī (was) aderam, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (was) eram.

Sī (were) aderās, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (were) erās.

Sī (was) aderat, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (was) erat.

Sī (were) aderāmus, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (were) erāmus.

Sī (were) aderātis, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (were) erātis.

Sī (were) aderant, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (were) erant.

# 135.

1. (Ego) eram, (tū) erās, (ille) erat; (nōs) erāmus, (vōs) erātis, (illī) erant. 2. Sī aderat,¹ parātus eram. 3. Vōbīs illō diē² ūtilis eram. 4. Et tū³ et ille³ eō diē dīgnus laude omnī erātis.³ 5. Avaricī erāmus frūmentī causā. 6. Num eōs diēs⁴ omnēs Rōmae erātis? 7. Silva erat nōn māgna inter nostrum⁵ atque hostium exercitum. 8. Multī vostrūm Helvētiīs amīcī erant. 9. Nōs vostrī oblītī erāmus, vōs nostrī nōn. 10. Num suī oblītī sunt? 11. Brūtusne Gallicīs nāvibus⁵ praeerat?

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1305, a, 2 and example. 2256, 1; Rule 55. <sup>3</sup> 205 and a. <sup>4</sup> 256, 2; Rule 55. <sup>5</sup> 99, a. 6231. a.

H.: 1 Rule XLIV. I. 2429: Rule XXXI. 8463. I., II. and 1; Rule XXXVI. 4379;

Rule IX. 5447. 6386.

Sing. 1. ad'eram

2. ad'e rās

3. ad'e rat

Plur. 1. ad e rā'mus

2. ad e rā'tis 3. ad/erant.

136.

1. You (sing.) were in Rome on that day; now you are in Avaricum. 2. If I was in charge of the army, it was well. 3. I was in Rome many days; now I am at home. 4. There were two roads; one through the Sequani, the other through our province. 5. The soldiers of this legion were forgetful of Caesar. 6. We were not forgetful of you (plur.); you were forgetful of us. 7. Caesar was in charge of the soldiers on that day. 8. All those days we were in Avaricum, which is a town of Gaul. 9. You were a soldier; you are now a commander. 10. The leaders are men of great courage. 11. We are in charge of this fortification. 12. I am wretched on account of Caesar's approach.

# SUM, FUTURE INDICATIVE. FUTURE CONDITIONS.

Suggestions. — 1. In translating, use shall in the first person, will in the second and third persons; e.g. I shall be, you will be, he will be; we shall be, you will be, they will be.

2. The following paradigms illustrate the Future Condition, More Vivid, with the future tense in both protasis and apodosis: —

Sī (am) aderō, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (shall be) erō.

Sī (are) aderis, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (will be) eris.

Sī (is) aderit, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (will be) erit.

Sī (are) aderimus, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (shall be) erimus.

Sī (are) aderitis, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (will be) eritis.

Sī (are) aderunt, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (will be) erunt.

The Latin future in the protasis is commonly translated by the English present, but the auxiliary shall may be used in the protasis throughout.

#### 137.

1. Erō, eris, erit; erimus, eritis, erunt. 2. Sī aderit,¹ parātus erō.¹ 3. Rōmae eram, domī sum, in Germāniā erō. 4. Nōs, quī amīcī tuī sumus, hūius lēgātiōnis prīncipēs erimus. 5. Pōns quī est ad Genāvam in nostrīs manibus erit. 6. Ubī illō diē eris, amīce? Vesontiōnī (-e) erō. 7. Quī cum cōnsule fortī illō diē erunt? 8. Sī mihī amīcitia populī Rōmānī deerit, miser erō. 9. Equitātuī, quem auxiliō² Caesarī² Haeduī mīttunt, tū praeeris. 10. Nōnne vōs, quī novissimīs³ auxiliō erātis, in cornū sinistrō eritis? 11. Vōs nōbīs auxiliō māgnō estis. 12. Superiōrēs et virtūte⁴ et numerō⁴ erātis. 13. Nōs in numerō tuōrum amīcōrum semper erimus. 14. Decima legiō māgnō ūsuī vōbīs eōs diēs omnēs erat. 15. Sī pars exercitūs superit, nōbīs⁵ erit spēs victōriae. 16. Sī decima legiō aberit, hostēs audācissimī erunt.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.:  $^{1}$  **305**, b, 1 (a) and example.  $^{2}$  **233** and a; Rule 27.  $^{8}$  **188**, c.  $^{4}$  **253**; Rule 53.  $^{5}$  **231**; Rule 25.

H.: <sup>1</sup>507, I.; 508. <sup>2</sup>390, I., II.; Rule XIII. <sup>3</sup>440; 441. <sup>4</sup>424; Rule XXIX. <sup>5</sup>387.

Sing. 1. ad'e rõ 2. ad'e ris

2. ad'e rit

Plur. 1. ad e'ri mus
2. ad e'ri tis
3. ad'e runt

# 138.

1. You who are making these plans will be known to the enemy.
2. If I am in charge of (future) the army, it will be well. 3. You who are of great assistance to us will always be in the number of our friends. 4. We were in Germany, we are now in Rome, we shall be in Vesontio. 5. You who are the leading men of that embassy will be of great use to the consul. 6. The tenth legion will be of great use to us all those days. 7. You (sing.) who are in charge of the tenth legion will be an aid to the leader.
8. Shall we not be of use to those who are making this plan?
9. If a part of the army remains (future), you will have hope of victory. 10. If the consul is (future) absent, the enemy will be more daring.

#### SUM, PERFECT INDICATIVE.

Suggestions.—1. The perfect indicative is to be translated was or has been, as seems best to fit the meaning of the sentence. Many sentences will allow either meaning. In connected discourse, the context will generally decide which translation must be used.

- 2. Sī (have been) adfuī, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (have been) fuī.
  - Sī (have been) adfuistī, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (have been) fuistī.
  - Sī (has been) adfuit, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (has been) fuit.
  - Sī (have been) adfuimus, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (have been) fuimus.
  - Sī (have been) adfuistis, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (have been) fuistis.
  - Sī (have been) adfuērunt, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (have been) fuēre.

### 139.

1. Fuī, fuistī, fuit; fuimus, fuistis, fuērunt or fuēre. 2. Sī adfuit,¹ parātus fuī.¹ 3. Hostis fuistī; in numerō cīvium eris. 4. Captīvus fuī; nunc in salūte sum. 5. Illa cīvitās, patrum nostrōrum memoriā, māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte fuit. 6. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque in castrīs fuistī. 7. Hī praefectī, quī cōnsulī auxiliō fuērunt (fuēre), māgnō in honōre sunt. 8. Est mihī² domī pater. 9. Exercitus tibǐ est, et is mihī māgnō ūsuī est. 10. Nōs, quī ēius cōnsilī auctōrēs fuimus, nunc māgnā in grātiā sumus. 11. Germānīs fuit rēx, Ariovistus. 12. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum³ trium. 13. Quae mercēs illī erit?

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup>305, a, 2, second example. <sup>2</sup>231 and Remark. <sup>8</sup>215, b.
H.: <sup>1</sup>507, I.; 508 and 2, <sup>2</sup>387, <sup>8</sup>396, V.

Sing. 1. ad'fuī
2. ad fu i'stī
3. ad'fu it

Plur. 1. ad fu'i mus.
2. ad fu i'stis
3. ad fu ē'runt (-re)

# 140.

1. Divitiacus has been especially acceptable to the common people. 2. If I have been in charge of the army, it has been well. 3. Within the memory of your ancestors, Divitiacus was a chief

among them. 4. I was in the territory of Germany, you (sing.) were at Rome. 5. These states have been of great influence among the Belgae. 6. All the rest of the Belgae were of assistance to the rear. 7. Five successive days from that day you were at home. 8. We who are chiefs have a great reward. 9. The plan which you (plur.) have will be acceptable to the consul. 10. The armies which the consuls have will be of great use to them. 11. We have a mother at home.

#### SUM. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

Suggestion.—The sign of the pluperfect in English is had; e.g. fueram, I had been; fuerās, you had been, etc.

#### 141.

1. Fueram, fuerās, fuerat; fuerāmus, fuerātis, fuerant. 2. Ego dux illīus agminis fueram. 3. Captīvī in castrīs hostium fuerātis. 4. Praefectō vestrō semper nōtus fueram. 5. Illī agminī praefuerās. 6. Hūius lēgātiōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō alterō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. 7. In urbe hostium fuerāmus; illō diē Rōmae fuimus. 8. Galba istīus profectiōnis auctor nōn fuerat. 9. Rōmae erant, in Galliā fuerant; Vesontiōne (-ī) erunt. 10. Mīlitēs decimae legiōnis, quī in castrīs fuerant, illō diē novissimō agminī auxiliō fuērunt (fuēre). 11. Haec rēs mihī māgnō ūsuī fuerat. 12. Equī quōs prīncipēs habent illīs māgnō ūsuī fuērunt (fuēre).

Sing. 1. ad fu'e ram

2. ad fu'e rās

3. ad fu'e rat

Plur. 1. ad fu e rā'mus

2. ad fu e rā/tis 3. ad fu/e rant

# 142.

1. You (sing.) who had been in the ship were in great peril.
2. You (plur.) who have been in the Roman army are worthy of all praise. 3. We had been companions of senators; on that day we were exiles. 4. The authority of this state had been very great. 5. One thing was of greatest use to the state. 6. The

soldiers of the tenth legion, who had been of assistance to the rear rank, were on that day in camp. 7. You had been chief of an embassy in another war. 8. I had been in charge of that fortification.

# SUM, FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE. FUTURE CONDI-TIONS, MORE VIVID.

Suggestions.—1. The sign of the future perfect in English is shall have, in first persons; will have, in second and third; e.g. fuero, I shall have been; fueris, you will have been, etc.

- 2. Sī (am) adfuero, nostrīs māgno ūsuī (shall be) ero.
  - Sī (are) adfueris, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (will be) eris.
  - Sī (is) adfuerit, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (will be) erit.
  - Sī (are) adfuerimus, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (shall be) erimus.
  - Sī (are) adfueritis, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (will be) eritis.
  - Sī (are) adfuerint, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (will be) erunt.

The Latin future perfect in the protasis is usually translated by the English present, but the auxiliary shall have been may be used in the protasis throughout.

# 143.

1. Fuerō, fueris, fuerit; fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint. 2. Sī adfuerit,¹ parātus fuerō.¹ 3. Reliquus in illā urbe fuerit nēmō. 4. Nōs amīcīs nostrīs ūsuī fuerimus. 5. Sī vobīs amīcitia populī Rōmānī dēfuerit, miserrimī eritis. 6. Mīlitibus illīs multae difficultātēs fuerint. 7. Cīvēs vestrī lēgātiōnī ūtilēs fuērunt. 8. Post ēius mortem ad eam rem Helvētiī parātī erant. 9. Dumnorix, māgnā apud plēbem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum fuit. 10. Ego itinere longō dēfessus fuerō. 11. Urbs Rōma ornāmentō cīvitātī erit. 12. Inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius sēnīs mīlibus ² passuum interest.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.:  ${}^{1}$  307, 2,  $\alpha$ , Note and c, first clause.  ${}^{2}$  94, e and Note.

H.: 1507, I.; 508. 2178 and Note.

Sing. 1. ad fu'e rō

2. ad fu'e ris

3. ad fu'e rit

Plur. 1. ad fu e'ri mus

2. ad fu e'ri tis

3. ad fu'e rint

#### 144.

1. You will have been witnesses of these things. 2. If I am in charge (fut. perfect) of the army, it will be (fut. perfect) well. 3. Great will have been the authority of the friendly states. 4. You (sing.) will have been braver than these citizens. 5. All these states will have been in the power of the Roman people. 6. Our city is not more than six thousand paces distant from your territory. 7. Between our rear rank and the front rank of the enemy is the river Rhone. 8. This place was a thousand paces distant from the enemy. 9. If our cavalry is absent (fut. perfect), the enemy will be more daring. 10. If a part of the cavalry remains (fut. perfect), I shall have hope of victory.

# SUM, PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE. FUTURE CONDITIONS, LESS VIVID.

Suggestion.—The following form of conditional sentence is called a Future Condition, Less Vivid:—

- Sī (should) ad**sim**, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (should) sim.
- Sī (should) adsīs, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) sīs.
- Sī (should) adsit, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) sit.
- Sī (should) adsīmus, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (should) sīmus.
- Sī (should) adsītis, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) sītis.
- Sī (should) adsint, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) sint.

# 145.

1. Sī praesēns sim, sī praesēns sīs, sī praesēns sit; sī praesentēs sīmus, sī praesentēs sītis, sī praesentēs sint. 2. Sī adsit,¹ parātus sim.¹ 3. Sī haec rēs hostibus nota sit, māgno in metū sītis. 4. Sī ab hostium castrīs non longius mille passibus absīs, māgno in perīculo sīs. 5. Sī prope castra hostium sīmus, māgno in perīculo sīmus. 6. Sī Helvētiī ad eam rem parātī sint, ducēs eorum laetī sint.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.: 1305, b, 2 (a) and example; 307, 2 and b. H.: 1507, II.; Rule XLIV. II.; 509 and Note 1.

Sing. 1. ad'sim
2. ad'sīs
3. ad'sit

Plur. 1. ad sī/mus 2. ad sī/tis 3. ad/sint

#### 146.

1. If I should be ready, if you should be ready, if he should be ready; if we should be ready, if you should be ready, if they should be ready. 2. If I should be in charge of the army, it would be well. 3. If the crops should be ripe, the soldiers would be glad. 4. If the king should be present, we should be ready for these things. 5. If you (sing.) should be in great fear, this would be known to the enemy. 6. If I should be in charge of this fortification, you (plur.) would have hope of victory.

# SUM, IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT, PRESENT TIME.

Suggestion.—The conditional sentence with the Imperfect Subjunctive in both protasis and apodosis is known as a supposition contrary to fact, in present time.

Sī (were) adessem, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (should) essem.

Sī (were) adessēs, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) essēs.

Sī (were) adesset, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) esset.

Sī (were) adessēmus, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (should) essēmus.

Sī (were) adessētis, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) essētis.

Sī (were) adessent, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) essent.

# 147.

1. Sī praesēns essem, sī praesēns essēs, sī praesēns esset; sī praesentēs essēmus, sī praesentēs essētis, sī praesentēs essent.

2. Sī adesset,¹ parātus essem.¹ 3. Sī Caesar praesēns esset, in salūte essēmus.

4. Sī sub monte essem, māgnō in perīculō essētis.

5. Sī Cōnsidius reī² mīlitāris perītus esset, nōn essēs in exercitū Sullae.

6. Sī summus mōns in manibus Labiēnī esset, spēs esset victōriae.

7. Sī nōn essent nōbīs ducēs perītī, māgnae essent difficultātēs.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1305, c, 1 and example. 2218, a; Rule 18. H.: 1507, III.; 510 and Note 1. 2399, I., 1, 2 and 3; Rule XVII.

Sing. 1. ad es'sem 2. ad es'sēs

3. ad es'set

Plur. 1. ad es sē'mus 2. ad es sē'tis

3. ad es'sent

#### 148.

1. If I were ready, if you were ready, if he were ready; if we were ready, if you were ready, if they were ready. 2. If I were in charge of the army, it would be well. 3. If we were upon the top of the hill, we should be in [a place of] safety. 4. If you (plur.) were ready for battle, you would not be in great fear of an attack. 5. If you (sing.) were upon the summit of the mountain, you would be in sight of the enemy. 6. If the coming of Caesar were known to the enemy, they would be in great fear.

# SUM, PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. FUTURE CONDITIONS, LESS VIVID.

Suggestions.—1. The Perfect Subjunctive is inflected like the Future Perfect Indicative, substituting only fuerim for fuerō. See Exercise 143.

- 2. The following form of conditional sentence illustrates the Future Condition, Less Vivid, with the Perfect Subjunctive in protasis:—
  - Sī (should) adfuerim, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (should) sim.
  - Sī (should) adfueris, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) sīs.
  - Sī (should) adfuerit, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) sit.
  - Sī (should) adfuerimus, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (should) sīmus.
  - Sī (should) adfueritis, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) sītis.
  - Sī (should) adfuerint, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would) sint.

The Latin perfect subjunctive in the *protasis* is commonly translated as above, but the auxiliary *should have* may be used in the *protasis* throughout.

# 149.

Sī cautus fuerim, sī cautus fueris, sī cautus fuerit; sī cautī fuerimus, sī cautī fueritis, sī cautī fuerimt.
 Sī adfuerit,¹ parātus sim.¹
 Sī illō diē Avaricī fuerim, cupidus sim rērum novārum.
 Sī māximē plēbī acceptus fueris, māgnō in honōre sīmus.
 Sī Caesar fuerit Sullā clārior, bene sit.
 Sī sub monte fuerimus, māgnō in perīculō sīmus.
 Sī in exercitū Sullae fueritis,

reī mīlitāris perītī sītis. 8. Sī in exercitū Cōnsidī fuerint exploratorēs, eī Caesarī ūsuī sint. 9. Sī fortēs fueritis, in hōc bellō victorēs fuerimus.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.:  ${}^{1}$ **305**, b, 2 ( $\beta$ ) and example. H.:  ${}^{1}$ **509** and Note 1.

Sing. 1. ad fu'e rim

3. adfu'erit

Plur. 1. ad fu e'ri mus 2. ad fu e'ri tis

3. adfu'e rint

### 150.

1. If I should be diligent, if you should be diligent, if he should be diligent; if we should be diligent, if you should be diligent, if they should be diligent. 2. If I should (have been) be in charge of the army, it would be well. 3. We should (have been) be ready for battle, if there should be leaders in camp. 4. If the enemy should (have been) be in sight, you (sing.) would be in great danger. 5. If I should (have been) be ready for an attack, there would be great hope of victory. 6. If you (plur.) should not be braver than the consul, great would be the disaster of the Roman people.

# SUM, PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. CONDITIONS CON-TRARY TO FACT, PAST TIME.

Suggestion.—The following form of the Conditional Sentence with the Pluperfect Subjunctive in both protasis and apodosis, is known as a Supposition Contrary to Fact in Past Time:—

- Sī (had) adfuissem, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (should have) fuissem.
- Sī (had) adfuissēs, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would have) fuissēs.
- Sī (had) adfuisset, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would have) fuisset.
- Sī (had) adfuissēmus, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī  $(should\ have)$  fuissēmus.
- Sī (had) adfuissētis, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would have) fuissētis.
- Sī (had) adfuissent, nostrīs māgnō ūsuī (would have) fuissent.

# 151.

1. Sī praesēns fuissem, sī praesēns fuissēs, sī praesēns fuisset; sī praesentēs fuissēmus, sī praesentēs fuissētis, sī praesentēs fuissētis.

sent. 2. Sī adfuisset,¹ parātus fuissem.¹ 3. Sī cautus fuissem, sī cautus fuissēs, sī cautus fuisset; sī cautī fuissēmus, sī cautī fuissētis, sī cautī fuissent. 4. Sī cupidus rērum novārum fuisset, dux coniūrātionis fuisset. 5. Sī eo diē Romae fuissēmus, hostēs fortissimī fuissent. 6. Sī prope hostium castra fuissem, pūgna fuisset. 7. Sī proximī Germānis fuissētis, māgno in perīculo fuissētis. 8. Sī fortis fuissēs, spēs victoriae fuisset.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.:  $^1$ 305, c, 2 and example. H.:  $^1$ 510, and Note 1.

Sing. 1. ad fu is'sem

2. ad fu is'sēs

3. adfuis'set

Plur. 1. ad fu is sē/mus

2. ad fu is sē'tis

3. ad fu is/sent.

### 152.

1. If I had been ready, if you had been ready, if he had been ready; if we had been ready, if you had been ready, if they had been ready. 2. If I had been in charge of the army, it would have been well. 3. If I had been diligent, if you had been diligent, if he had been diligent; if we had been diligent, if you had been diligent, if they had been diligent. 4. If you (sing.) had been in Rome all those days, I should not have been in great fear. 5. If this matter had been your care, you (plur.) would have been safe. 6. If we had been men of great boldness, they would not have been desirous of a revolution.

#### RECAPITULATION OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Suggestion.—The sentences in Exercise 153 are to be classified and translated, after completing and translating the paradigms indicated below:—

#### SIMPLE CONDITIONS.

Present Time: Sī adest, parātus sum, etc. Past Time: Sī aderat, parātus eram, etc. Past Time: Sī adfuit, parātus fuī, etc.

#### FUTURE CONDITIONS, MORE VIVID.

Future Time: Sī aderit, parātus erō, etc.

Future, Protasis Completed: Sī adfuerit, parātus erō, etc.

Future, Completed: Sī adfuerit, parātus fuero, etc.

#### FUTURE CONDITIONS, LESS VIVID.

Future Time: Sī adsit, parātus sim, etc.

Future, Protasis Completed: Sī adfuerit, parātus sim, etc.

Future, Completed: Sī adfuerit, parātus fuerim, etc.

#### CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT.

Present Time: Sī adesset, parātus essem, etc. Past Time: Sī adfuisset, parātus fuissem, etc.

#### 153.

1. Sī Divicō prīnceps sit, laetī nōn sītis. 2. Sī nōbīs equitātus fuisset, tū in potestāte hostium nōn fuissēs. 3. Sī meī nōn oblītus es, laetus sum. 4. Sī nostrī in castrīs fuerint, in salūte erimus. 5. Sī Divicō prīnceps fuerit (ind.), laetī nōn fueritis (ind.). 6. Sī meī nōn oblītus fuistī, laetus fuī. 7. Sī nostrī in castrīs fuerint (subj.), in salūte fuerimus (subj.). 8. Sī nobīs equitātus esset, tū in potestāte hostium nōn essēs. 9. Sī meī nōn oblītus erās, laetus eram. 10. Sī Divicō prīnceps fuerit, laetī nōn sītis. 11. Sī nostrī in castrīs erunt, in salūte erimus.

#### RECAPITULATION CONTINUED.

Suggestions. — The paradigms indicated below are to be completed and translated into Latin.

#### SIMPLE CONDITIONS.

Present Time: If I am in charge of the army, it is well, etc. Past Time: If I was in charge of the army, it was well, etc.

Past Time: If I have been in charge of the army, it has been well, etc.

#### FUTURE CONDITIONS, MORE VIVID.

Future Time: If I am (shall be) in charge of the army, it will be well, etc. Future, Protasis Completed: If I am (shall have been) in charge of the army, it will be well, etc.

Future, Completed: If I am (shall have been) in charge of the army, it will be (will have been) well, etc.

#### FUTURE CONDITIONS, LESS VIVID.

Future Time: If I should be in charge of the army, it would be well, etc.

Future, Protasis Completed: If I should be (should have been) in charge of the army, it would be well, etc.

Future, Completed: If I should be (should have been) in charge of the army, it would be (would have been) well, etc.

#### CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT.

Present Time: If I were in charge of the army, it would be well, etc.

Past Time: If I had been in charge of the army, it would have been well, etc.

#### 154.

1. If we are (shall be) faithful all those days, we shall be of great service to the consul. 2. If you (plur.) are here, it is well. 3. We should be in great peril, if we were near the camp of the enemy. 4. If the consul should be here, we should be better prepared for all these things. 5. If you have been here, it has been well. 6. If we are (shall have been) faithful all those days, we shall be of great service to the consul. 7. We should have been in great peril, if we had been near the camp of the enemy. 8. If the consul should be (should have been) here, we should be better prepared for all these things. 9. If we are (shall have been) faithful all these days, we shall be (shall have been) of great service to the consul. 10. If you (plur.) were here, it was well. 11. If the consul should be (should have been) here, we should be (should have been) better prepared for all these things.

# SUM, IMPERATIVES, INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLE.

SUGGESTIONS. - 1. IMPERATIVE:

Present, Sing. 2, es, be (thou, you); Plur. 2, este, be (ye, you).

Future, Sing. 2, estō, you shall be, thou shall be; Plur. 2, estōte, ye (you) shall be.

#### 2. Infinitive:

Present, esse, to be; Perfect, fuisse, to have been; Future, futurus esse (fore), to be about to be.

#### 3. PARTICIPLE:

Future, futurus, about to be (declined like bonus).

- 4. α. **Ego parātus sum** becomes, with a verb of saying,
  - b. Ego parātus eram (fuī, fueram) becomes
  - c. Ego parātus erō (fuerō, sim, fuerim) becomes
  - d. Ego parātus essem (fuissem) becomes

- (Dīcit) sẽ parātum esse, (He says) that he is ready.
- (Dicit) se paratum fuisse, (He says) that he was (has been, had been) ready.
- (Dicit) se paratum futurum esse, (He says) he will be (will have been, would be, would have been) ready.
- (Dīcit) sē parātum futūrum esse, (He says) that he would be (would have been) ready.

### 155.

1. Mihī amīcus es.¹ Amīcīs vestrīs este fidēlēs. Dīligēns cotīdiē estō. Fortēs semper estōte. 2. Ego sum parātus. Dīcit ² sē ³ esse ³ parātum.⁴ 3. Ego eram (fuī, fueram) parātus. Dīcit sē fuisse parātum. 4. Ego erō (fuerō, sim, fuerim) parātus. Dīcit sē futūrum ⁴ esse parātum. 5. Dīcit sē esse nostrīs māgnō ūsuī. 6. Dīcit ⁵ sē fuisse ⁵ nostrīs māgnō ūsuī. 7. Dīcit sē futūrum esse nostrīs māgnō ūsuī. 8. In potestāte populī Rōmānī sumus, neque cum Belgīs reliquīs in coniūrātiōne fuimus, parātīque erimus sociī fidēlēs esse populī Rōmānī; reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt, māgnusque est eōrum furor. 9. Remī dīcunt sē in potestāte populī Rōmānī esse, neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs in coniūrātiōne fuisse, parātōsque futūrōs esse sociōs fidēlēs esse populī Rōmānī; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, māgnumque esse eōrum furōrem.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1269. 2336, 1. 3272; 336, 2, first sentence; Rule 60. 4 Rule 2. 5336, A and Note 1.

H.: 1487; Rule 40. 2535, I., 1 and 2. 3522; 523, I.; Rule LIII. I. 4 Rule XXXIV. 5537.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.
Sing. 2. ad'es
Plur. 2. ad e'ste

Future Tense.
Sing. 2 and 3. ad e'stō
Plur. 2. ad e stō'te

Plur. 3. ad sun'tō

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Perfect Tense. ad es'se

Present Tense. ad fu is'se

Future Tense.
ad fu tū'rus es'se
or
ad'fo re

The future participle of ad'sum is ad fu tū'rus.

### 156.

1. Be (sing.) very brave. Be (plur.) very faithful to the Roman people. You (sing.) shall be very diligent every day. You (plur.) shall always be daring. 2. He says that he is in great fear. 3. He says that he was, has been, had been in great fear. 4. He says that he will be, will have been, would be, would have been in great fear. 5. He says that he would be, would have been in great fear.

#### SYNOPSIS.

At this point thoroughly commit and recite synopses of the verb sum; e.g. sum, eram, erō, fuī, fueram, fuerō, sim, essem, fuerim, fuissem; es, erās, erīs, fuistī, fuerās, fueris, sīs, essēs, fueris, fuissēs, es; and so on through all the different persons. Compare A. & G., pp. 82, 83; H., pp. 84, 85.

# FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES, INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE.

Suggestions.—1. In connection with sentences 1 and 8, learn the Personal Endings of Verbs, as follows:—

ACTIVE VO	CE.	Passive V	OICE.
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1m (-ō or -ī)	-mus	-r	-mur
2s	-tis	-ris or -re	-minī
3t	-nt	-tur	-ntur

- 2. Verb-stems of the First Conjugation end in -ā-; e.g.  $laud\bar{a}$  (stem of  $laud\bar{o}$ ),  $m\bar{i}r\bar{a}$  (stem of  $m\bar{i}ror$ ). In the present tense, the personal endings are joined directly to the verb-stem, -ā-final becoming (see 1 and 8) -a- before -t, -nt, and -ntur.  $Laud\bar{o}$  is for  $laud\bar{a}$ -m and  $m\bar{i}ror$  for  $m\bar{i}r\bar{a}$ -r.
- 3. Miror, I wonder at, is a Deponent Verb; i.e. it has the passive form only, with an active meaning.
- 4. In Latin Exercises from 157 to 173, illustrating the first conjugation, sentences numbered 2 may be developed for practice in verb inflection and translation, as follows:—

Sī hōc spērō, errō; Sī hōc spērās, errās, etc.

#### 157.

1. Laudō, laudās, laudat; laudāmus, laudātis, laudant. 2. Sī hōc spērō, errō. 3. Ego tē tuā virtūte laudō. 4. Interim cotīdiē Haeduōs¹ frūmentum¹ flāgitāmus. 5. Tū quī² Caesaris amīcus es,² concilium prīncipum convocās. 6. Servōs bonōs māgnā vōce laudātis. 7. Caesar Liscum, quī summō magistrātuī praeest quem³ "vergobretum"³ appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus⁴ et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter accūsat. 8. Laudor, laudāris or laudāre, laudātur; laudāmur, laudāminī, laudantur. 9. Et tū et ille māgnā vōce laudāminī.⁵ 10. Et nōs et vōs virtūte laudāmur.⁵ 11. Urbemne mīrāris⁶? Māgnitūdinem urbis mīror.⁶ 12. Nostrī, quī māgnō in perīculō erant, ā legiōnibus multīs fortibusque nunc iuvantur. 13. Nōnne laudibus vulgī cōnfirmāre (-ris)? 14. Num prōditiōnis accūsāmur? 15. Nōs, quī amīcī populī Rōmānī appellāmur, prōditiōnis nōn accūsāmur.

Directions. — 1. Learn A. & G.: 1239, 2 and c; Rule 34. 2204 and a; Rule 4. 3239, 1 and a. 4191. 5205, a and b. 6135. 7220; Rule 20. H.: 1374; Rule VII. 3373 and 1; Rule VI. 4443. 5463, I., II., and 1. 6231; 465, 2. 7409, II.; Rule XX. II.

2. Inflect all verbs of the conjugation illustrated in any given Exercise as suggested by the accompanying paradigms and commit thoroughly to memory.

#### Vocō, I summon.

ACTIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. vo/cō Plur. 1. vo cā/mus
2. vo/cās 2. vo cā/tis
3. vo/cat 3. vo/cant

Passive Voice, Indicative Mood, Present Tense.

Sing. 1. vo'cor Plur. 1. vo cā/mur 2. vo cā/mis (re) 2. vo cā/mi nī

3. vo cā'tur 3. vo can'tur

Suggestion.—In English Exercises 158 to 174, sentences numbered 2 may be developed for translation as follows: If I am assisting the nobility, I am strengthening the conspiracy; if you are assisting the nobility, you are strengthening the conspiracy, etc. Sentence 9 in the same Exercises may be similarly developed by inflecting the apodosis.

#### 158.

1. I summon, you summon, he summons; we summon, you summon, they summon. 2. If I am assisting the nobility, I am strengthening the conspiracy. 3. Are we strengthening the conspiracy? 4. I demand grain [of] you. 5. The undertaking is not difficult, if you (plur.) all approve. 6. The consul gives many rewards to all who assist him in the undertaking. 7. You (sing.) do not often assist a better cause. 8. I am summoned, you are summoned, he is summoned; we are summoned, you are summoned, they are summoned. 9. If there is need, I wonder at it. 10. We are protected, if the city is occupied by our legions. 11. If you (plur.) are armed, the camp is well protected. 12. I am protected, and you (sing.) are encouraged.

# FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES. INDICATIVE MOOD, IMPERFECT TENSE.

Suggestions. — 1. In this tense the personal endings are connected with the verb-stem by the tense-sign - $b\bar{a}$ -. Notice in 1 that - $b\bar{a}$ - in some situations becomes -ba-.

- 2. The Imperfect is to be translated by expressions denoting continuance; e.g. laudābam, I was praising, I used to praise, I was wont to praise, I was in the habit of praising, often simply I praised.
  - 3. The stem of do is da- (short -a-).
- 4. Translate suō mōre, in accordance with his custom; quicquam potestātis, any power.

#### 159.

1. Laudābam, laudābās, laudābat; laudābāmus, laudābātis, laudābant. 2. Sī hōc spērābam, errābam. 3. Suō mōre¹ māgna patrum foedera laudābat. 4. Mercēdēs multās iuvenibus fidēlibus dabās. 5. Cūr quicquam potestātis² trāns Rhēnum postulābāmus? 6. Hominēs inimīcō animō agrōs vastābant. 7. Haeduōs auxilium flāgitābātis. 8. Laudābar, laudābūrts or laudābūre, laudābūtur; laudābāmur, laudābāminī, laudābantur. 9. Et ego et tū saepe laudābāmur. 10. Et vōs et illī iūre laudābāminī. 11. Ego Genāvā vocābar et cōnsul³ creābar. 12. Tū cōnsul creābāris (-re), quam rem⁴ nēmō mīrābātur. 13. Prōditiōnīs accūsābantur, id quod⁴ omnēs mīrābantur.

DIRECTIONS. — 1. Learn A. & G. :  ${}^{1}$ **253** and Note, first sentence; Rule 53.  ${}^{2}$ **216**, a, 3; Rule 16.  ${}^{3}$ **176**, a and b.  ${}^{4}$ **200**, e.

H.: 1424 and Note 1; Rule XXIX. 2397 and 3; Rule XVI. 3362, 1 and 2, 1) and 2); Rule I.

2. Notice that the Voice, Mood, and Tense of the paradigms given are suggested by the headings of Exercises.

Sing. 1. vo cā/bam
2. vo cā/bās
3. vo cā/bat

Plur. 1. vo cā bā/mus 2. vo cā bā/tis 3. vo cā/bant

Sing. 1. vo cā/bar
2. vo cā bā/ris (-re)
3. vo cā bā/tur

Plur. 1. vo cā bā'mur 2. vo cā bā'mi nī 3. vo cā ban'tur

# 160.

1. I used to summon, you used to summon, he used to summon; we used to summon, you used to summon, they used to summon.

2. If I was assisting the nobility, I was strengthening the conspiracy.

3. We were wont to demand chariots of the consul.

4. If you were expecting chariots from him, you were mistaken.

5. The soldiers were not in the habit of praising a consul who was not assisting them.

6. I was showing the danger to the consul, you were demanding of him assistance.

7. Why were you expecting any assistance from him?

8. I was summoned,

you were summoned, he was summoned; we were summoned, you were summoned, they were summoned. 9. If there was need, I was wondering at it. 10. Both he and I used often to be summoned to Rome. 11. I was not assisted by the consul, a thing at which you (plur.) were all wondering. 12. You (sing.) were being overpowered by the enemy, a thing at which no one was wondering.

# FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES. INDICATIVE MOOD, FUTURE TENSE.

### 161.

1. Laudābō, laudābis, laudābit; laudābimus, laudābitis, laudābunt. 2. Sī hōc spērābō,¹ errābō. 3. Tū cōnsulem aliquod² bonum (aliquid² bonī) flāgitābis. 4. Quod nāvium³ in eō locō fuerit, armābit. 5. Sī Caesar perfugam condōnābit, eum līberābō. 6. Sī nōs cohortēs omnīs comportābimus, vōs urbem expūgnābitis. 7. Iūs lēgātōrum servō et servābam et servābō. 8. Laudābor, laudāberis or laudābere, laudābitur; laudābimur, laudābiminī, laudābuntur. 9. Nōs prōditiōnis accūsāmur et Rōmam vocābimur. 10. Tū māgnitūdinem Rōmae mīrābāre (-ris), potestātem ēiusdem mīrāberis (-re). 11. Vōs ā nostrīs legiōnibus iuvābiminī et ā hostibus nōn superābiminī. 12. Illī Rōmam vocābuntur et nōs superābimur. 13. Prōditiōnis accūsābar, id quod omnēs mīrābuntur.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.:  ${}^1$ 278, and b.  ${}^2$ 105, d and paradigm.  ${}^3$ 216, a, 3.

H.: 1470, 2. 2190, 2, 1), Notes 1 and 2. 3397 and 3.

Sing. 1. vo cā'bō

2. vo cā'bis

3. vo cā/bit

Sing. 1. vo ca'bor

2. vo cā'be ris (-re)

3. vo cā bi tur

Plur. 1. vo cā'bi mus

2. vo cā'bi tis

3. vocā'bunt

Plur. 1. vo cā/bi mur

2. vo cā bi'mi nī

3. vo cā bun'tur

#### 162.

1. I shall summon, you will summon, he will summon; we shall summon, you will summon, they will summon. 2. If I assist the nobility, I shall strengthen the conspiracy. 3. If we bring our legions together, the State will assist us. 4. I shall demand assistance of the State. 5. You (plur.) were protecting and will protect the rights of all the citizens. 6. Some will set the slaves free, others will arm the allies. 7. You (sing.) will encourage the auxiliaries. 8. I shall be summoned, you will be summoned, he will be summoned; we shall be summoned, you will be summoned, they will be summoned. 9. If there is need, I shall wonder at it. 10. If we are conquered, you (plur.) will be accused of treason. 11. If I am set free, you (sing.) will be pardoned. 12. If our forces are brought together, the city will be captured.

# FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES. INDICATIVE MOOD, PERFECT TENSE.

Suggestions.—1. The Perfect Stem of laudō is laudūv-. The tense-sign of the perfect active is -vi-. Notice in sentence 1 that the perfect active has certain special personal-endings: Sing. 2, -stī; Plur. 2, -stis; 3, -ērunt or -ēre.

- 2. This tense is translated (1) as a Perfect Definite, e.g.  $laud\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ , I have praised; or (2) as a Historical Perfect, e.g.  $laud\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ , I praised. Carefully distinguish (2) from I praised, meaning I was praising and expressed by  $laud\bar{a}bam$ . Translate perfects in 163 both as historical perfects and perfect definites.
- 3. The Perfect Passive is a compound tense formed by using the Perfect Passive Participle, e.g. *laudātus*, *having been praised* (declined like *bonus*), with the present tense of **sum**.
- 4.  $Iuv\bar{\mathbf{o}}$  has an irregular perfect, inflected as follows:  $i\bar{u}v\bar{\mathbf{i}}$ ,  $i\bar{u}v\mathbf{isti}$ ,  $i\bar{u}v\mathbf{isti}$ ,  $i\bar{u}v\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ runt or  $i\bar{u}v\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ re. Its perfect participle is  $i\bar{u}t\mathbf{us}$ .

# 163.

1. Laudāvī, laudāvistī, laudāvit; laudāvimus, laudāvistis, laudāvērunt or laudāvēre. 2. Sī hōc spērāvī, errāvī. 3. Agrōs Helvētiō-

rum ferrő ignique vastāvimus. 4. Timor exercitum occupāvit. 5. Sī vos exsulēs iūvistis, errātis. 6. Sociī nostrī duo itinera dēmönstrāvērunt (-ēre). 7. Ego hös mīlitēs, quī urbem servābant, iūvī, tū eosdem māgnopere confirmāvistī. 8. Laudātus (-a) (-um) sum, laudātus (-a) (-um) es, laudātus (-a) (-um) est; laudātī (-ae) (-a) sumus, laudātī (-ae) (-a) estis, laudātī (-ae) (-a) sunt. 9. Consul laudātus est. Legiō laudāta est. Concilium laudātum est. 10. Iuvenēs iūtī et servātī sunt. Fēminae iūtae et servātae sunt. Auxilia iūta et servāta sunt. 11. Vos, quī iūtī estis, in loco idoneo collocati estis. 12. Agri, qui vastabantur, non servati sunt

Sing. 1. vo cā'vī

2. vo cā vi'stī

3. vocā/vit

Sing. 1. vo cā'tus sum 2. vo cā'tus es

3. vo cā'tus est

Plur, 1, vo cā/vi mus

2. vo cā vi'stis 3. vo cā vē'runt (-re)

Plur. 1. vo cā/tī su/mus

2. vo cā/tī e/stis

3. vo cā'tī sunt.

### 164.

1. I (have) summoned, you (have) summoned, he (has) summoned; we (have) summoned, you (have) summoned, they (have) summoned. 2. If I have assisted the nobility, I have strengthened the conspiracy. 3. We have equipped the ships which you pointed out. 4. I have assisted the citizens who liberated the slaves. 5. The fear which took possession of the army has assisted the enemy. 6. You (plur.) have encouraged the enemy, and they have laid waste our fields. 7. Why did you (sing.) encourage the enemy? 8. I have been (was) summoned, you have been (were) summoned, he has been (was) summoned; we have been (were) summoned, you have been (were) summoned, they have been (were) summoned. 9. If there has been need, I have wondered at it. 10. You (sing.) have been very much harassed, if your cities have been laid waste. 11. You (plur.) have been pardoned, and we have been set free. 12. The prisoner has been set free, a thing which I have very much wondered at.

# FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES. INDICATIVE MOOD, PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Suggestions.—1. The Pluperfect Active is formed by connecting the verb-stem and the personal-endings by means of the tense-sign -verā. Its forms may easily be remembered by thinking of them as made up of the imperfect tense of sum joined to the perfect stem; e.g. laudāv-eram, laudāv-erās, etc.

2. The Pluperfect Passive is formed by using the Perfect Passive Participle with the imperfect tense of  $\mathbf{sum}$ ; e.g.  $laud\mathbf{\bar{a}tus}$   $\mathbf{eram}$ , I had been praised.

#### 165.

- 1. Laudāveram, laudāverās, laudāverat; laudāverāmus, laudāverātis, laudāverant.
  2. Ego hōc spērāveram sed errābam.
  3. Sevēritātem lēgum laudāverātis.
  4. Nōs praefectōs saepe cōnfirmāverāmus; sed eī nōs nunquam iūverant.
  5. Cōpiās, quae bonō in populum Rōmānum animō nōn erant, domum vocāverās.
  6. Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāveram.
  7. Ōrātor Caesarem māgnum appellāverat.
  8. Laudātus (-a) (-um) eram, laudātus (-a) (-um) erās, laudātus (-a) (-um) erat; laudātī (-ae) (-a) erāmus, laudātī (-ae) (-a) erātis, laudātī (-ae) (-a) erant.
  9. Cōnsul iūtus erat. Legiō iūta erat. Concilium iūtum erat.
  10. Iuvenēs vocātī erant. Fēminae vocātae erant. Auxilia vocāta erant.
  11. Laudibus cīvium bonōrum saepe cōnfirmātī erāmus.
  12. Ego amīcus populī Rōmānī appellātus eram, tū prōditiōnis accūsātus erās.
  13. Vōs, quī vocātī estis, ūnō in locō collocātī erātis.
  - Sing. 1. vo cā've ram
    - $2. \text{ vo } c\bar{a}' ve r\bar{a}s$
    - 3. vo cā/ve rat
  - Sing. 1. vo cā/tus e/ram 2. vo cā/tus e/rās
    - 3. vo cā'tus e'rat

- Plur. 1. vo cā ve rā'mus
  - 2. vo cā ve rā'tis
    - 3. vo cā've rant
- Plur. 1. vo cā'tī e rā'mus
  - 2. vo cā'tī e rā'tis
  - 3. vo cā'tī e'rant

# 166.

1. I had summoned, you had summoned, he had summoned; we had summoned, you had summoned, they had summoned. 2. I

had assisted the nobility, but I had not strengthened the conspiracy. 3. The strictness of the laws had especially assisted our cause. 4. You (sing.) had encouraged my friends, and I had protected yours. 5. We laid waste the fields, but you (plur.) had captured the cities of the enemy. 6. How quickly have we conquered the troops which they had brought together! 7. We had prepared for a great war. 8. I had been summoned, you had been summoned, he had been summoned; we had been summoned, you had been summoned, they had been summoned. 9. There has been need, but I had not wondered at it. 10. I had been accused of treason, but you (sing.) had been called a friend of the Roman people. 11. The city had been captured, and the prisoners set free. 12. We had not expected assistance, but you (plur.) had quickly brought together large forces.

# FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES. INDICATIVE MOOD, FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Suggestions.—1. The tense-sign of the Future Perfect Active is -veri-. Notice that this tense has the perfect stem, and that the remaining part of the verb is inflected like the future of sum, except that in Plur. 3, -i- is retained before -nt.

- 2. This-tense is used with great exactness in Latin; in English, its place is often supplied by the future or even the present tense.
- 3. The Future Perfect Passive is formed by using the Perfect Passive Participle with the future tense of sum; e.g. laudātus erō, I shall have been praised.

# 167.

1. Laudāverō, laudāveris, laudāverit; laudāverimus, laudāveritis, laudāverint. 2. Sī hōc spērāverō, errāverō. 3. Facilis tum erit rēs, cum omnēs probāverimus. 4. Nōs tum in salūte erimus, cum in ūnō locō legiōnēs collocāveritis. 5. Ut sociōs iūveris, ita tū laude dīgnus eris. 6. Errābō, sī in hīs locīs cōpiās nōn collocāverō. 7. Ut hīc cīvīs servāverit, ita sē cīvēs servābunt. 8. Laudātus (-a) (-um) erō, laudātus (-a) (-um) eris, laudātus (-a) (-um)

erit; laudātī (-ae) (-a) erimus, laudātī (-ae) (-a) eritis, laudātī (-ae) (-a) erunt. 9. Pōns servātus erit. Urbs iūta erit. Iter parātum erit. 10. Fīnēs nostrī servātī erunt. 11. Vōs tum fortitūdinem hostium mīrāberis, cum ab illīs superātī eritis. 12. Sī nōs prōditiōnis accūsātī erimus, amīcī populī Rōmānī nōn appellābimur.

 Sing. 1. vo cā/ve rō
 Plur. 1. vo cā ve/ri mus

 2. vo cā/ve ris
 2. vo cā ve ri tis

 3. vo cā/ve rit
 3. vo cā/ve rint

Sing. 1. vo cā'tus e'rō

2. vo cā'tus e'ris

3. vo cā'tus e'rit

3. vo cā'tus e'rit

3. vo cā'tus e'rit

#### 168.

1. I shall have summoned, you will have summoned, he will have summoned; we shall have summoned, you will have summoned, they will have summoned. 2. If I assist (shall have assisted) the nobility, I shall strengthen (shall have strengthened) the conspiracy. 3. When we shall have given the scout suitable assistance, then will he be more daring. 4. Then will you (sing.) praise the strictness of the laws, when the nobility shall have attempted a revolution. 5. If you shall have conquered the nobility, you will liberate Italy from great fear. 6. As you (plur.) shall have brought together great armies, so will you assist the cause of liberty. 7. As I shall have harassed the enemy, so will the undertaking be easy. 8. I shall have been summoned, you will have been summoned, he will have been summoned; we shall have been summoned, you will have been summoned, they will have summoned. 9. If there is (shall have been) need, I shall wonder at it. 10. The young men will have been assisted. The troops will have been assisted. The auxiliaries will have been assisted. 11. As the Mediterranean Sea shall have been protected, so will our revenues be safe. 12. If we shall be (shall have been) encouraged by large revenues, I shall be prepared for war.

# FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE.

Suggestion.—The Present Subjunctive in both voices changes final -ā-of the verb-stem to -ā-, which becomes -e- before the endings -m, -t, -nt; -r, -ntur.

#### 169.

1. Sī laudem, sī laudēs, sī laudet; sī laudēmus, sī laudētis, sī laudent. 2. Sī hōc spērem, errem. 3. Sī mē iuvētis, pecūniam multam vōbīs dem. 4. Hīc servōs līberet, sī omnēs probent. 5. Servī sint fidēlēs, sī eōs līberēmus. 6. Sī mīlitēs fortīs dextrō in cornū collocēmus, hostēs nostrōs superēmus. 7. Sī Caesar perfugam condōnet, laetus sim. 8. Sī lauder, sī laudēris or laudēre, sī laudētur; sī laudēmur, sī laudēminī, sī laudentur. 9. Sī nōs armēmur, vēs nōn superēminī. 10. Sī hostēs superentur, eōs servem.

Sing.	1.	vo'cem	Plur.	1.	vo c <b>ē'mus</b>
	2.	vo'cēs		2.	vo c <b>ē'tis</b>
	3.	vo'cet		3.	vo'cent
Sing.	2.	vo'cer vo cē'ris (-re) vo cē'tur	Plur.	2.	vo c <b>ē'mur</b> vo c <b>ē'mi nī</b> vo c <b>en'tur</b>

# 170.

1. If I should summon, if you should summon, if he should summon; if we should summon, if you should summon, if they should summon. 2. If I should assist the nobility, I should strengthen the conspiracy. 3. If we should assist the nobility, you (plur.) would not approve. 4. If you (sing.) should encourage the exiles, you would go wrong. 5. If Caesar should demand aid of me, I should bring together all our forces. 6. If I should pardon the treachery of Dumnorix, he would be very glad. 7. If they should approve the undertaking, they would not go wrong. 8. If I should be summoned, if you should be summoned, if he should be summoned, if they should be summoned. 9. If there should

be need, I should wonder at it. 10. If you (sing.) should be prepared for war, the citizens would be delighted. 11. If you (plur.) should be assisted, I should be especially encouraged. 12. If a bad man should be elected consul, we should be greatly harassed.

# FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, IMPERFECT TENSE.

Suggestion. — The connecting tense-sign of the Imperfect Tense in both voices is -rē-. This becomes -re- before the endings, -m, -t, -nt; -r, -ntur.

#### 171.

1. Sī laudārem, sī laudārēs, sī laudāret; sī laudārēmus, sī laudārētis, sī laudārent. 2. Sī hōc spērārem, errārem. 3. Sī mē auxilium flāgitārētis, legiōnēs fortēs in nostrā urbe collocārem.

4. Sī eōs iuvārēmus, nōbīs pecūniam multam darent. 5. Sī omnēs probārētis, auxilia dextrō in cornū collocārem. 6. Auxilia in sinistrō cornū collocārēmus, sī adessētis. 7. Laetus essem, sī tū cornū dextrum iuvārēs. 8. Sī laudārer, sī laudārēris, or laudārēre, sī laudārētur; sī laudārēmur, sī laudārēminī, sī laudārentur. 9. Sī nōs armārēmur, vōs nōn superēminī. 10. Sī tū cōnsul creārēris, ego ā multīs virīs fortibus iuvārer. 11. Omne imperium cōnsulī nostrō nōn darētur, sī nōs ā virīs fortissimīs iuvārēmur.

Sing.	1.	vo cā'rem	Plur. 1.	vo cā rē'mus
	2.	vo cā'rēs	2.	vo cā rē'tis
	3.	vo c <b>ā'ret</b>	3.	vo c <b>ā'rent</b>
Sing.	1.	vo c <b>ā'rer</b>	Plur. 1.	vo c <b>ā rē'mur</b>
	2.	vo cā rē'ris (-re)	2.	vo cā rē'mi nī
	3.	vo cā rē'tur	3.	vo cā ren'tur

# 172.

1. If I were summoning, if you were summoning, if he was summoning; if we were summoning, if you were summoning, if they were summoning. 2. If I were assisting the nobility, I should strengthen the conspiracy. 3. If we were liberating the slaves, the populace would not approve. 4. If all were approve-

ing, I should assist the exile. 5. If I were ready, I should set the captives free. 6. We should assist the unfortunate men, if we were present. 7. If I were elected consul, I should strengthen the cause of liberty. 8. If I were summoned, if you were summoned, if he were summoned; if we were summoned, if you were summoned, if they were summoned. 9. If there were need, I should wonder at it. 10. Good men would be encouraged, if you (sing.) were assisted. 11. If we were armed, you (plur.) would not be conquered. 12. If I were summoned, he would be protected.

# FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES

Suggestions.—1. The Perfect Subjunctive Active is inflected like the Future Perfect Indicative with this exception, that in Sing. 1 final -i- of the tense-sign is unchanged and the personal-ending -m is retained.

- 2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive has the tense-sign -vissē-. Its final -ē-becomes -e- before the personal-ending -m, -t, and -nt. The inflection of this tense may easily be remembered by thinking of its forms as made up of the perfect stem, prefixed to the imperfect subjunctive of sum with its initial vowel changed from e to i throughout; e.g. laudāv-essem becomes laudāv-issem.
- 3. The Perfect and Pluperfect Passive are formed by using with the perfect participle the present and imperfect subjunctive of **sum**; *e.g.* Perfect, *laudātus sim*, etc.; Pluperfect, *laudātus essem*, etc.

# 173.

1. (a) Sī laudāverim, sī laudāveris, sī laudāverit; sī laudāverimus, sī laudāveritis, sī laudāverint. (b) Sī laudāvissem, sī laudāvissem, sī laudāvissems, sī laudāvissems, sī laudāvissent. 2. (a) Sī hōc spērāverim, errem. (b) Sī hōc spērāvissem, errāvissem. 3. Sī eam rem ēnūntiāverim, mē graviter accūsēs. 4. Sī cīvēs frūmentum flāgitāvissēmus, id comportāvissent. 5. Sī perfidiam Dumnorigis condōnāvissem, Caesar mē graviter accūsāvisset. 6. Sī eōs iūvissēmus, urbem expūgnāvissent. 7. Sī perfidiam Dumnorigis condōnāvissēs, cōnsilia Caesaris hostibus ēnūntiāvis-

sēs. 8. (a) Sī laudātus (-a) (-um) sim, etc. (b) Sī laudātus (-a) (-um) essem, etc. 9. Sī lēgātus superātus sit, ego māgnopere mīrer. 10. Sī tū condōnātus essēs, nēmō mīrātus esset. 11. Sī nostrae urbēs vastātae essent, concilium prīncipum convocāvissēmus. 12. Sī nōs ā legiōnibus veterānīs iūtī essēmus, vōs nōn superātī essētīs.

Sing. 1. vo cā've rim Plur. 1. vo cā ve'ri mus 2. vo cā/ve ris 2. vo cā ve'ri tis 3. vo cā've rint 3. vo cā/ve rit. Sing. 1. vo cā vis'sem Plur. 1. vo cā vis sē/mus 2. vo cā vis/sēs 2. vocā vis sē'tis 3. vo cā vis'set 3. vo cā vis'sent Plur. 1. vo ca'tī sī'mus Sing. 1. vo cā'tus sim 2. vo cā'tus sīs 2. vo cā'tī sī'tis 3. vo cā/tus sit. 3. vo cā'ti sint Plur. 1. vo cā'tī es sē'mus Sing. 1. vo cā'tus es'sem 2. vo cā'tus es'sēs 2. vo cā'tī essē'tis

#### 174.

3. vocā'tī es'sent

3. vo cā'tus es'set

1. (a) If I should summon (should have summoned), if you should summon, if he should summon; if we should summon, if you should summon, if they should summon. (b) If I had summoned, if you had summoned, if he had summoned; if we had summoned, if you had summoned, if they had summoned. 2. (a) If I should assist (should have assisted) the nobility, I should strengthen the conspiracy. (b) If I had assisted the nobility, I should have strengthened the conspiracy. 3. If you (sing.) should pardon treachery, the consul would severely censure you. 4. If I had revealed your plans, you (sing.) would never have pardoned me. 5. If we had summoned the scout, he would have revealed your plans. 6. If you (sing.) should capture the camp, we all should approve. 7. If the commander had approved, we should have protected the bridge. 8. (a) If I should be summoned, etc. (b) If I had been summoned, etc. 9. (a) If there should be (should have been) need, I should wonder at it. (b) If there had been need, I should have wondered at it.

#### IMPERATIVES, INFINITIVES. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Suggestions. — 1. The Imperative endings are as follows: —

ACTIVE VOICE. Present: Sing. 2.—, e.g. parā, prepare (thou, you); Plur. 2. -te, e.g. parāte, prepare (ye, you). Future: Sing. 2. -tō, e.g. parātō, you shall (thou shalt) prepare; Sing. 3. -to, e.g. parato, he shall prepare; Plur. 2. -tōte, e.g. parātōte, you (ye) shall prepare; Plur. 3. -ntō, e.g. parantō, they shall prepare.

Passive Voice. Present: Sing. 2. -re, e.g. parare, be (thou, you) prepared; Plur. 2. -minī, e.g. parāminī, be (you) prepared. Future: Sing. 2. -tor, e.g. parātor, you shall (thou shalt) be prepared; Sing. 3. -tor, e.g. parātor, he shall be prepared; Plur. 3. -ntor, e.g. parantor, they shall be prepared.

The Infinitive endings are as follows: -

ACTIVE VOICE. Present: -re, e.g. liberare, to set free; Perfect: -visse, e.g. līberāvisse, to have set free; Future: -tūrus (-tūra, -tūrum) esse, e.g. līberātūrus esse, to be about to set free.

Passive Voice. Present: -rī, e.g. līberārī, to be set free; Perfect: -tus (-ta, -tum) esse, e.g. līberātus esse, to have been set free; Future: -tum īrī, e.g. līberātum īrī, to be about to be set free.

3. In the change to the infinitive mood, after verbs such as respondet, he replies,

a. Errat becomes

{ (Respondet) eum errāre. (He replies) that he is going wrong.

b. Errāvit (errābat, errāve-rat) becomes  $\begin{pmatrix} (Respondet) \text{ eum errāvisse.} \\ (He \ replies) \ that \ he \ went \text{ or } has \ gone \ (was \ going, \ had \ gone) \ wrong.$ 

c. Erräverit (erräbit, erret, erräverit) becomes  $\{ (Respondet) \ {\tt eum \ errätūrum \ esse.} \\ (He \ replies) \ that \ he \ will \ have \ gone \ (will \ go, \ would \ go, \ would \ have \ gone) \ wrong.$ 

d. Erräret (errävisset) be-  $\begin{cases} (Respondet) \text{ eum errätürum fuisse.} \\ (He \ replies) \ that \ he \ was \ going \ (had \ gone) \\ wrong. \end{cases}$ 

e. Mīrātur id becomes

{ (Respondet) eum id mīrārī. } (He replies) that he wonders at it.

f. Mīrātus est id (mīrābā-tur, mīrātus erat) be-comes { (Respondet) eum id mīrātum esse. (He replies) that he (has) wondered, (was wondering, had wondered) at it.

#### 175.

1. Laudā,¹ laudāte; laudātō, laudātō, laudātōte, laudantō. Laudāre,¹ laudāminī; laudātor, laudātor, laudantor. 2. Laudāre. Laudāvisse. Laudātūrus (-tūra, -tūrum) esse. Laudārī. Laudātus (-ta, -tum) esse. Laudātum īrī. 3. Praeterita² Divitiacō frātrī condōnō. Caesar dīcit praeterita sē Divitiacō frātrī condōnāre.³ 4. Tūtum iter per fīnēs nostrōs dabimus. Respondent sē tūtum iter per fīnēs suōs datūrōs esse.³ 5. Cīvitātem cōnsuētūdine meā cōnservāvī. Dīcit sē cīvitātem cōnsuētūdine suā cōnservāvisse.³ 6. Minus dubitātiōnis mihī datur. Caesar respondet sibī minus dubitātiōnis ⁴ darī. 7. Nostra cōnsilia hostibus sunt ēnūntiāta. Liscus prōpōnit nostra cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiāta esse.³

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1110, c; 112, c. 2188 and Remark. 3335; 336, 1, and 2 first sentence; 336, A, and Note 1 first sentence. 4216, a, 2. H.: 1487, 1 and 2; Rule XL. 2441 and 1. 3522 and 1; 523 and 1; Rule LIII. I. 4397 and 3.

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE.	Present Tense.	PASSIVE VOICE.					
Sing. 2. vo'cā	1	Sing. 2. vo cā're					
Plur. 2. vo cā'te		Plur. 2. vo cā'mi nī					
	Future Tense.						
Sing. 2 and 3. vo ca'to	1	Sing. 2 and 3. vo cā'tor					
Plur. 2. vo cā tō'te		Plur. 2. ——					
Plur. 3. vo can'tō		Plur. 3. vo can'tor					
Infinitive Mood.							
ACTIVE VOICE.	Present Tense.	PASSIVE VOICE.					
vo cā're	1.	vo c <b>ā</b> 'rī					
	Perfect Tense.						
$\mathrm{vo}\mathrm{c}\mathrm{\bar{a}}\mathrm{vis'se}$	1	vo cā'tus es'se					
	Future Tense.						
vo cā tū'rus es'se		vo cā'tum ī'rī					
		(vo cā'tus fo're)					

## 176.

1. Summon (thou, you), summon (ye, you); you shall (thou shalt) summon, he shall summon, you (ye) shall summon, they shall summon. Be (thou, you) summoned, be (ye, you) summoned; you shall (thou shalt) be summoned, he shall be summoned, they shall be summoned. 2. To summon. summoned. To be about to summon. To be summoned. To have been summoned. To be about to be summoned. 3. We pardon the past for [the sake of] our friend. They say that they pardon the past for [the sake of] their friend. 4. I have given [them] a safe passage through my territory. He replies that he had given [them] a safe passage through his territory. 5. We shall spare the state in accordance with our custom. They say that they will spare the state in accordance with their custom. 6. Less [of] doubt was given to us. They reply that to themselves less [of] doubt was given. 7. Our plans are disclosed to the enemy. Liscus represents that our plans are disclosed to the enemy.

## FIRST CONJUGATION. PARTICIPLES, ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

Suggestions. — 1. The following tables show the corresponding Latin and English participles, also the Latin endings: —  $\,$ 

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

LATIN.

ENGLISH.

Pres. -ns, Probāns.
Perf. -, (Wanting).
Fut. -tūrus, Probātūrus.

Approving.

Having approved.
(Wanting.)

#### PASSIVE VOICE.

LATIN.

ENGLISH.

Pres. —, (Wanting).
Perf. -tus, Probātus.
Fut. -ndus, Probandus.

(Being) approved.

Having been approved.

(Wanting.)

- 2. In the declension of  $prob\bar{a}ns$ ,  $-\bar{a}$  becomes -a- before -nt-. Decline it, using  $d\bar{u}lig\bar{e}ns$ , Exercise 85, as a model. The other participles are declined like bonus.
- 3. The Present Active, and Perfect Passive, Participles are much used in the construction called the Ablative Absolute: thus in the phrase monte occupātō, monte is in the ablative case, and occupātō agrees with it. A. & G., Rules 2 and 54; H., Rules XXXIV. and XXXII. It may be variously translated: e.g. (literally) the mountain having been occupied; (by the missing participles) the mountain being occupied, having occupied the mountain; (by a clause) when, (since, as) the mountain had been occupied, when he had occupied the mountain; (by a phrase) after occupying the mountain, etc. So mē praesente may be translated (literally, I being present), when I was present; in my presence, etc.

#### 177.

1. Haec, mē¹ praesente,¹ dīcit. 2. Lēgātus, quī equitātuī praeest, tertium aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīttit. 3. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa² in partēs trēs. 4. Caesar, suōs cohortātus,³ proelium commīttit. 5. Caesar, cum⁴ oppidum expūgnāvit, centuriōnēs vehementer incūsat. 6. Dum⁴ paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem morātur,⁵ timor māgnus omnem exercitum occupāvit. 7. Caesar, occupātō⁴ oppidō, ibī praesidium conlocat. 8. Hostēs, datō sīgnō, ex omnibus portīs ērumpunt. 9. Obsidibus datīs, Caesar ibī castra pōnit. 10. Ambarrī, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs suīs vim hostium prohibent. 11. Datā⁻ facultāte,⁻ hostēs ab iniūriā nōn temperābunt. 12. Mē⁴invītō,⁶ iter per prōvinciam temptāvistis. 13. Orgetorix, M. (Mārcō) Messālā⁶ et M. Pīsōne⁶ cōnsulibus,⁶ coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis facit.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: \(^1\)255; Rule 54. \(^2\)291, b. \(^3\)135, a and b; \(^2\)290, d, 1. \(^4\)290, c. \(^5\)276, e. \(^6\)290, d, 2. \(^7\)310, a. \(^8\)255, a. \(^1\)431; Rule XXXII. \(^2\)471, 6, Note 1; \(^5\)550, Note 2. \(^3\)195, II. 2; 231. \(^4\)550, Note 5. \(^5\)467, 4. \(^6\)550, Note 4. \(^7\)549, 2. \(^8\)431, 4.

#### PARTICIPLES.

Active Voice, *Pres.* vo'cāns; *Fut.* vo cā tū'rus. Passive Voice, *Perf.* vo cā'tus; *Fut.* vo can'dus.

M. F. M. F. Sing. Nom. vo/cans Plur. vo can'tes vo can'ti a Gen. vo can'ti um vo can'tis vo can'tī vo can'ti bus Acc. vo can/tem vo'cāns vo can'tīs (ēs) vo can'tia Voc. vo/cans vo can'tes vo can'tia Abl. vo can'tī or vo can'te vo can'ti bus

Decline vo cā'tus and vo cā tū'rus like a mī'cus and in i mī'cus, Exercise 29.

Suggestion. — Italicized clauses and phrases below are to be translated by the ablative absolute.

178.

1. He says this in the presence of many witnesses. 2. The centurion brings assistance to his struggling soldiers. 3. The hill is occupied by legions which are of service to the rear rank. 4. Caesar, having encouraged the soldiers, gives a signal for the fight. 5. When the enemy have occupied the town, we shall be in great danger. 6. While we delay many days on the march, the enemy capture the town. 7. Caesar, after occupying the towns of the enemy, sends his legions into winter [quarters]. 8. Our forces at a given signal break forth from camp. 9. Many hostages having been given, Caesar leads his army into Gaul by as long marches as possible. 10. Since the fields have been devastated, the enemy betake themselves into the forests. 11. If an opportunity should be given, the enemy would not refrain from violence. 12. The Helvetii, against Caesar's will, attempt a march through the territory of the Sequani. 13. The Helvetii prepare themselves for the journey in the consulship of L. (Lucius) Piso and A. (Aulus) Gabinius.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION. THE GERUNDIVE.

Suggestion.—The Future Passive Participle has a peculiar adjective use in which it is known as a *Gerundive*. In the Gerundive construction, such a phrase as for transporting the legions takes the Latin form ad legiones transportandas, in which legiones is the accusative after ad, and transportandas agrees with legiones. Notice that the nearest approach to a literal translation of this Latin phrase is the expression for the about-to-be-transported legions. This construction is very common.

## 179.

1. Gallī vītandī ¹ aestūs causā ² plērumque silvārum āc flūminum propinquitātēs petunt. 2. Gallī subitō proeliī ³ renovandī ⁴ cōnsilium capiunt. 3. Germānī māgnam nāvium cōpiam ad trānsportandum ⁴ exercitum ⁵ mīttunt. 4. Caesar C. (Cāium) Trebōnium cum legiōnibus tribus ad eam regiōnem dēpopulandam mīttit. 5. Caesar in hīs locīs nāvium parandārum causā morātur. 6. Tempus rēbus ⁶ administrandīs ⁴ nōn dabātur. 7. Caesar ad hostīs cōnsectandōs equitātum mīttit. 8. Tempus ad īnsīgnia accommodanda dēfuit.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1297; 298. 2245, c. 3 Rule 14. 4 Rule 2.

. 5152. 6 Rule 21.

H.: 1543 and Note. 2416 and foot-note 2.

3 Rule XVI. 4 Rule XXXIV. 5432;

433. 6 Rule XII. I.

## THE GERUNDIVE (Fut. Pass. Participle).

	м.	F.	N.
Sing. No	m. vo can'dus	vo can'da	vo can'dum
Ge	en. vo can'dī	vo can'dae	vo can'dī
Da	at. vo can'dō	vo can'dae	vo can'dō
Ac	cc. vo can'dum	vo can'dam	vo can'dum
Vo	oc. vo can'de	vo can'da	vo can'dum
Al	ol. vo can'dō	vo can'dā	vo can'dō

Complete the plural as suggested by the singular.

## 180.

1. Caesar chooses the plan of renewing the war. 2. We delay in the province to prepare (for the sake of preparing) an army.
3. The consul sends ships to transport (for transporting) our legions. 4. The consul sends two legions to devastate (for devastating) the fields of the enemy. 5. Time was not given for (dative) putting on our helmets. 6. Caesar sends soldiers to pursue (for pursuing) the deserters. 7. Time is lacking for executing our plans.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION. THE GERUND.

Suggestions.—1. The Gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension, neuter gender. Its plural and nominative singular are wanting, and it is declined as follows:—

Gen. postulandī, of demanding. Acc., postulandum, demanding. Dat., postulandō, to (or for) demanding. Abl., postulandō, by demanding.

- 2. Sentences 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 show the common use of the gerund. When the gerund would have an object, the gerundive construction has preference, but such constructions as those in 6, 7, 8, and 9 are not uncommon. Compare them with sentences 1, 2, 5, and 6 in the preceding exercise.
- 3. The Supines are verbal nouns of the fourth declension, in the acc. and abl. singular; e.g. rogātum, rogātū, to ask.
- 4. Notice that gerundives, gerunds, and supines denote a purpose. The infinitive must not be used in Latin to express a purpose, as in English.

## 181.

1. Spēs praedandī¹ studiumque bellandī² hostīs ab agricultūrā revocābat. 2. Animus hostium ad dīmicandum³ parātus est. 3. Germānī in Galliam praedandī causā veniunt. 4. Caesar hostibus potestātem pūgnandī facit. 5. Caesar in hīs locīs legionem hiemandī causā conlocat. 6. Gallī vītandī aestum causā plērumque silvārum āc flūminum propinquitātēs petunt. 7. Gallī subitō bellum renovandī cōnsilium capiunt. 8. Caesar in hīs locīs nāvīs parandī causā morātur. 9. Tempus rēs administrandō⁴ nōn dabātur. 10. Facultās suī⁵ līberandī hostibus nōn datur. 11. Haeduī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīttunt rogātum⁴ auxilium.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1295. 2298. 3300. 4299 and a. 5298, a. 6302; Rule 66. H.: 1541. 2542 and I. 3542 and III. 4542 and II. 5542, Note 1. 6545, and Note 2; 546; Rule LIX.

THE GERUND.

N. Gen. vo can'dī; Dat. vo can'dō; Acc. vo can'dum; Abl. vo can'dō.

THE SUPINES.

Former Supine, vo cā'tum; Latter Supine, vo cā'tū.

## 182.

1. The enemy cross the line to plunder (for the sake of plundering). 2. An opportunity of fighting is given to the enemy. 3. Caesar leads his army into [the country of] the Sequanī to pass (for the sake of passing) the winter. 4. The time is suitable for (ad) renewing the battle. 5. We prepared for (ad) [decisive] fighting. 6. The enemy delay many days for the sake of preparing war. 7. Caesar remains in the same place to avoid (for the sake of avoiding) danger. 8. The enemy have an opportunity of freeing themselves. 9. Ambassadors are sent to Caesar to ask aid.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Verbs which, like laudō, have -ā- before -re in the present infinitive (laudā-re) are of the First Conjugation. To inflect a verb throughout it is necessary to know (1) to what conjugation it belongs, and (2) its three stems. The Principal Parts of a verb are therefore:—

- 1. The Present Indicative, showing the present stem.
- 2. The Perfect Indicative, showing the perfect stem.
- 3. The Supine or Perfect Participle, showing the supine stem.
- 4. The Present Infinitive, showing the conjugation.

Thus, laudō, laudāvī, laudātum, laudāre.

Learn, from the Vocabulary, the principal parts of the following verbs of the first conjugation:  $appell\bar{o}$ ,  $arm\bar{o}$ ,  $colloc\bar{o}$ ,  $comport\bar{o}$ ,  $cond\bar{o}n\bar{o}$ ,  $c\bar{o}nfrm\bar{o}$ ,  $convoc\bar{o}$ ,  $cre\bar{o}$ ,  $d\bar{e}lect\bar{o}$ ,  $d\bar{e}m\bar{o}nstr\bar{o}$ ,  $\bar{e}n\bar{u}nti\bar{o}$ ,  $err\bar{o}$ ,  $ex\bar{s}stim\bar{o}$ ,  $exp\bar{u}gn\bar{o}$ ,  $flagit\bar{o}$ ,  $imper\bar{o}$ ,  $laud\bar{o}$ ,  $l\bar{b}ber\bar{o}$ ,  $occup\bar{o}$ ,  $opp\bar{u}gn\bar{o}$ ,  $par\bar{o}$ ,  $postul\bar{o}$ ,  $prob\bar{o}$ ,  $p\bar{u}gn\bar{o}$ ,  $serv\bar{o}$ ,  $sp\bar{e}r\bar{o}$ ,  $super\bar{o}$ ,  $tempt\bar{o}$ ,  $vast\bar{o}$ ,  $vex\bar{o}$ ,  $voc\bar{o}$ ; and of the irregular verbs  $d\bar{o}$ ,  $iuv\bar{o}$ . Repeat these till they are mastered.

Sum is an irregular verb. Its principal parts are sum,  $fu\bar{i}$ ,  $fut\bar{u}rus$ , esse.

#### SYNOPSES.

Give synopses of the above verbs, in all persons, throughout both voices.

## SECOND CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES, INDICATIVE MOOD. TENSES WITH PRESENT STEM.

Suggestions.—1. Verb-stems of the Second Conjugation end in -\(\bar{\epsilon}\); e.g. mon\(\bar{\epsilon}\)- (stem of mone\(\bar{\epsilon}\), I warn),  $ver\(\bar{\epsilon}\)- (stem of <math>ver\(\epsilon\))$ . Notice that

in the forms  $mone\bar{\mathbf{o}}$  and vereor,  $-\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ - is shortened and retained before  $-\bar{\mathbf{o}}$  and  $-\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ r; otherwise the changes of  $-\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ - correspond to those of final  $-\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ - in verb-stems of the first conjugation.

2. The paradigms begun in sentence 1 in this and the following Latin Exercises, are to be completed, compared with A. & G. 130, pp. 96 ff., or H. 207, pp. 90 ff., and translated. Sentences 2 and 3 may be developed in the various tenses for practice in verb inflection. For the synopsis of *vereor*, see A. & G. 135, II.

## 183.

1. Moneō. Monēbam. Monēbō. Moneor. Monēbar. Monēbor.
2. Sī collem teneō, hostīs pābulātiōne prohibeō. 3. Sī hostīs vereor, amīcus populī Rōmānī nōn habeor. 4. Nātiōnēs multae ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs¹ pertinent, important. 5. Caesar aliās cīvitātēs territandō,² aliās cohortandō,² in officiō tenēbat.
6. Lēgātus, quī locī nātūrā continētur, mūnītiōne prohibēbitur.
7. In castrīs remanēbāmus, quod³ (because) mīlitēs paucōs habēbātis. 8. In Ītaliā remanēbimus, quod īnsuētī nāvigandī⁴ mare timēmus. 9. Inopia frūmentī est, quod agricultūrā prohibēmur.
10. Caesar inopiam verēbātur, quod Germānī agricultūrae nōn student. 11. Vim hostium ab oppidō nōn prohibēbam, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur. 12. Hostēs oppidō remanēbunt, quod pābulātiōne prohibentur. 13. Monte occupātō, hostīs nōn verēbimur. 14. Hostīs videō, et mihř⁵ parātī ad pūgnandum nōn videntur.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1296; 300 and Note. 2301 (1). 3321; Rule 77, first clause. 4 Rule 18. 5232, c. H.: 1543; 544, I. 2542 and IV. 3516, I.; Rule XLVII. I. 4 Rule XVII. 5384, I.; Rule XII. I.

Video, I see (Passive, I seem).

ACTIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. vi'deō Plur. 1. vi dē'mus
2. vi'dēs 2. vi dē'tis
3. vi'det 3. vi'dent

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing.	1.	vi d <b>ē'bam</b>	Plur. 1.	vi d <b>ē bā'mus</b>
	2.	vi d <b>ē'bās</b>	2.	vi dē bā'tis
	3.	vide/bat	3	vi dē/hant

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. vi dē'bō	Plur. 1. vi dē'bi mus
2. vi dē'bis	2. vi d <b>ē'bi tis</b>
3. vi dē/bit	3. vidē'bunt

## Passive Voice, Indicative Mood.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.	1.	vi'de or	Plur.	1.	vi d <b>ē'mur</b>
	2.	vi dē'ris (-re)		2.	vi d <b>ē'mi nī</b>
	3.	vi d <b>ē</b> /tur		3.	vi den'tur

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing.	1.	vi d <b>ē</b> /bar	Plur. 1.	vi d <b>ē bā'mur</b>
	2.	vi dē bā'ris (-re)	2.	vi d <b>ē bā'mi nī</b>
	3.	vi d <b>ē bā'tur</b>	3.	vi d <b>ē ban'tur</b>

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1	. vi d <b>ē'bor</b>	Plur. 1.	vi d <b>ē'bi mur</b>
2	. vi dē/be ris (-re)	2.	vi d <b>ē bi'mi nī</b>
3.	vi d <b>ē'bi tur</b>	3.	vi dē bun'tur

## 184.

1. I see. I was seeing. I shall see. I seem. I seemed. I shall seem: 2. If you (sing.) remain in the army, the enemy will be kept from our territory. 3. Many things tend to enfeeble our minds. 4. You (sing.) are hemmed in by very rugged mountains. 5. The mountains will be held by our forces. 6. You (plur.) will keep the enemy from foraging and from fortifying. 7. I shall not remain at home, because I am afraid of danger. 8. All the Helvetii were desiring a revolution. 9. You (sing.) were detained at home by a storm. 10. We were kept from foraging, because the enemy were in sight. 11. If an opportunity of fighting is given (abl. abs.), I shall not be afraid of the enemy. 12. The victor seems to me worthy of all honor.

## SECOND CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES. REMAINING TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

Suggestions. —1. The perfect stem of  $mone\bar{o}$  is monu. The active tense-signs are as follows: perf.,  $-u\bar{a}$ ; pluperf.,  $-uer\bar{a}$ -; fut. perf., -ueri-. The tenses of the passive voice are formed as in the first conjugation.

2. The following have irregular perfects, and perfect participles; remaneō, perf., remānsī, perf. part. wanting; persuādeō, perf., persuāsī, perf. part., persuāsus; faveō, perf., fāvī, perf. part. wanting; removeō, perf., remōvī, perf. part., remōtus; respondeō, perf., respondī, perf. part., respōnsus; videō, perf., vīdī, perf. part., vīsus. The principal parts of audeō (semi-deponent, see A. & G. 136; H. 268, 3) are audeō, ausus sum, audēre.

185.

1. Monuī. Monueram. Monuerō. Monitus (-a) (-um) sum. Monitus (-a) (-um) eram. Monitus (-a) (-um) erō. 2. Sī collem tenuī, hostīs pābulātiōne prohibuī. 3. Sī hostīs veritus sum, amīcus populī Rōmānī nōn habitus sum. 4. Nostrīs persuāsī, et ī castra hostium oppūgnāre¹ ausī sunt. 5. Helvētiīs propter adfīnitātem fāverās. 6. Lēgibus paruerāmus et novīs rēbus nōn studuimus. 7. Sī equōs ex cōnspectū remōverimus, timidī vidēbimur. 8. Neque equōs ex cōnspectū remōvimus neque timidī vīsī sumus. 9. Sī in castrīs remānseris, timidus vidēberis. 10. Sī mūnītiōne prohibitī erimus, hostīs māgnō opere verēbimur. 11. Praefectus territus est quod commeātū prohibitū erāmus. 13. Castra commeātūs parandī (commeātum parandī) causā remōta erant. 14. Hostēs, datā facultāte, castra sex passuum mīlia ab oppidō remōverant.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G. :  $^1$ 271; Rule 59.  $^2$ 276,  $\alpha$  and Note 1, first sentence.

H.: 1533, and I. 1 and 2; Rule LVI. 2467, III. 2.

ACTIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. vī'dī
2. vī d**i'stī**3. vī'd**it** 

Plur. 1. vī'di mus
2. vī di'stis

3. vī dē'runt (-re)

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. vī'deram
 Plur. 1. vī'derā'mus

 2. vī'derās
 2. vī derā'tis

 3. vī'derat
 3. vī'deraut

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. vī/de rō
 Plur. 1. vī de/ri mus

 2. vī/de ris
 2. vī de/ri tis

 3. vī/de rit
 3. vī/de rint

## Passive Voice, Indicative Mood.

#### PERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. vī'sus sum
 Plur. 1. vī'sī su'mus

 2. vī'sus es
 2. vī'sī e'stis

 3. vī'sus est
 3. vī'sī sunt

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. vī'sus e'ram
 Plur. 1. vī'sī e rā'mus

 2. vī'sus e'rās
 2. vī'sī e rā'tis

 3. vī'sus e'rat
 3. vī'sī e'rant

#### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. vī'sus e'rō
 Plur. 1. vī'sī e'ri mus

 2. vī'sus e'ris
 2. vī'sī e'ri tis

 3. vī'sus e'rit
 3. vī'sī e'runt

## 186.

1. I saw (have seen). I had seen. I shall have seen. I seemed. I had seemed. I shall have seemed. 2. You (sing.) had persuaded the legions, and they have dared to storm the enemy's camp. 3. You (sing.) have favored the Helvetii on account of relationship. 4. You (plur.) had not obeyed the laws, and you (plur.) have desired a revolution. 5. They will have seemed cowardly, if they shall have removed the horses out of sight. 6. Neither had they seemed cowardly, nor had they removed the horses. 7. They have been regarded [as] brave because they have not seemed cowardly. 8. If I shall have been kept from foraging, I shall greatly fear hunger. 9. I

had feared greatly, because I had been kept from supplies. 10. I have delayed (pres.) in town many days, because I have been kept from fortifying. 11. The fields having been devastated, I have had no supplies. 12. Our allies have remained in camp for the sake of avoiding danger.

## SECOND CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. CLAUSES OF PURE PURPOSE.

Suggestions. — 1. Notice that, in the present subjunctive, final -ē- of the verb-stem becomes -eā-, which is shortened to -ea- before -m, -t, -nt; -r and -ntur.

- 2. The sentence  $remane\bar{o}$ , ut laudem et moneam, may be variously translated; e.g. I remain
  - (a) that (in order that) I may praise and warn;
  - (b) to (in order to) praise and warn;
  - (c) for the purpose of praising and warning.

The sentence remanebam ut laudārem et monērem is similarly translated, using might for may if form (a) is employed.

The ut-clauses in these sentences, also those in 4 to 10, are called *Clauses* of *Pure Purpose*. The singular of the verbs in these sentences should be inflected in place.

3. When the verb of a subordinate clause is in the subjunctive, the tense to be used is determined by a preceding verb with which the clause is connected; thus in suggestion 2, above, remaneō, present indicative, is followed by laudem and moneam, present subjunctives; remanebam, imperfect indicative, by laudārem and monerem, imperfect subjunctives. This principle is called Sequence of Tenses.

## 187.

- 1. Sī moneam. Sī monērem. Sī monuerim. Sī monuissem. Sī monear. Sī monērer. Sī monitus (-a) (-um) sim. Sī monitus (-a) (-um) essem. 2. Sī collem teneam, hostīs pābulātiōne prohibeam. 3. Sī hostīs verear, amīcus populī Rōmānī nōn habear. 4. Remaneō¹ (remanēbō, remānserō) ut² laudem³ et moneam.
- 5. Remānsī<sup>4</sup> ut laudem et moneam. 6. Remānsī (remanēbam,

remānseram) ut laudārem et monērem. 7. Castra removeō (removēbō, remōverō) ut timōris suspiciōnem vītem. 8. Castra removēbam (remōvī, remōveram) ut timōris suspiciōnem vītārem. 9. Legiōnem in hīs locīs collocō (collocābō, collocāverō) nē pābulātiōne prohibear. 10. Legiōnem in hīs locīs collocāveram (collocābam, collocāvī) nē pābulātiōne prohibērer.

Direction.—Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup>**285**, 1 and 2. <sup>2</sup>**317** and 1; Rule 74. <sup>3</sup>**286**, also Note and Remark, Rule 62. <sup>4</sup>**287**, a.

H.: <sup>1</sup>198, I. 1, 2, 3, and 4, II. 1, 2, and 3;
490; 491. <sup>2</sup>497, II.; Rule XLII.
II. <sup>3</sup>491; Rule XLI. <sup>4</sup>495, I.;
492, 2, Note 1.

## ACTIVE VOICE, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. vi'de am
 Plur. 1. vi de ā'mus

 2. vi'de ās
 2. vi de ā'tis

 3. vi'de at
 3. vi'de ant

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. vi dē'rem Plur. 1. vi dē rē'mus
2. vi dē'rēs 2. vi dē rē'tis
3. vi dē'ret 3. vi dē'rent

#### PERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. vī/de rim
 Plur. 1. vī de/ri mus

 2. vī/de ris
 2. vī de/ri tis

 3. vī/de rit
 3. vī/de rint

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing, 1. vī dis'sem
2. vī dis'sēs
2. vī dis'sēs
3. vī dis'set
2. vī dis'sent

## PASSIVE VOICE, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. vi'de ar	Plur. 1. vi de ā'mur
2. vi de ā'ris (-re)	2. vi de ā'mi nī
3. vi de ā'tur	3. vi de an/tur

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. vi dē'rer	Plur. 1. vi dē rē'mur
2. vi dē rē'ris (-re)	2. vi d <b>ē rē'mi nī</b>
3. vi d <b>ē rē</b> 'tur	3. vi dē ren'tur

### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing.	1.	vī'sus	sim	Plur.	1.	$v\bar{\imath}'s\overline{\imath}$	sī'mus
	2.	vī'sus	sīs		2.	$v\bar{\imath}'s\overline{\imath}$	sī'tis
	3.	vī'sus	sit		3.	$v\bar{\imath}'\mathbf{s}\overline{\imath}$	sint

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. vī'sı	us es'sem	Plur. 1.	$v\bar{\imath}'s\overline{\imath}$	es sē'mus
2. vī'sı	us es'sēs	2.	$v\bar{\imath}'s\overline{\imath}$	es sē'tis
3. vī/sī	us es'set	3.	vī' <b>sī</b>	es'sent

SUGGESTION. — Sentences 2 to 8 inclusive may be inflected in the plural, in both English and Latin. Watch carefully the sequence of tenses, and use nē to express a negative purpose, not ut non.

## 188.

1. If I should see. If I were seeing. If I should see (should have seen). If I had seen. If I should seem. If I were seeming. If I should seem (should have seemed). If I had seemed. 2. We remain (shall remain, shall have remained) that we may praise and warn. 3. We remained (were remaining, have remained, had remained) to praise and warn. 4. We shall move (are moving, shall have moved) camp in order to avoid suspicion of fear. 5. We were moving (moved, have moved, had moved) camp that we might avoid suspicion of fear. 6. We shall have located (are locating, shall locate) a legion in these places that

we may not be kept from foraging. 7. We had located (were locating, located, have located) a legion in these places lest we should be kept from foraging.

## PURPOSE CLAUSES, RELATIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE. ABRIDGED CONDITIONS. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

SUGGESTIONS.—1. Sentences 1 and 2 are Relative Clauses of Purpose. Sentences 3 to 8 inclusive are Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Sentences 9 to 12 inclusive are Abridged Conditional Sentences.

- 2. Translate quō in 2 like ut; ut after adverb of fearing, e.g. 7, below, that not; nē, 8, that or lest. Translate adsit and adesset, 9 and 11, were here; adfuerit and adfuisset, 10 and 12, had been here. The Latin treats such conditions as Conditions Less Vivid, the English as Suppositions Contrary to Fact. Translate operam dederant, 6, had taken pains.
  - 3. Purpose clauses as a rule use only the present and imperfect subjunctive.

## 189.

1. Caesar equitēs habet quī¹ impetum hostium sustineat.¹
2. Cōnsul lēgātō legiōnem dedit quō² impetum Gallōrum sustinēret.²
3. Caesar tribūnīs mīlitum imperābit ut ³ equitēs pūgnā prohibeant.³
4. Exsulēs ōrant ut sē iuvētis. 5. Caesar huic reī studēbit ut ⁴ ad urbem cum imperātōre remaneās.⁴
6. Lēgātī operam dederant ut ⁵ custōdēs quam māximē amīcōs habērent.⁵
7. Timēmus ut ⁶ (nē nōn) satis praesidī habeās.⁶
8. Timēbant nē ⁶ hostēs exercitum māgnum habērent.⁶
9. Horreō (horrēbō, horruī, horruerō) velut sī Ariovistus adsit. 10. Horreō (horrēbō, horruī, horrueram) velut sī Ariovistus adesset. 12. Horrēbam (horruī, horrueram) velut sī Ariovistus adfuisset.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup>317 and 2; Rule 74. <sup>2</sup>317, b and Note 2. <sup>8</sup>331. <sup>4</sup>331 and b. <sup>5</sup>331, e, 1. <sup>6</sup>331, f and Note. H.: <sup>1</sup>497, I.; Rule XLII. I. <sup>2</sup>497, II. 2, first sentence. <sup>3, 4</sup>498 and I. <sup>5</sup>498 and II. <sup>6</sup>498, III. and Note 1.

## 190.

1. We had cavalry to (quī) sustain the attack of the enemy. 2. The consul gives the lieutenant a legion in order that (quō) he may sustain the attack of the Gauls. 3. Caesar was commanding us that we keep the cavalry from battle. 4. The wounded men were entreating us to assist them (that we assist them). 5. We desire this thing, that you remain near town with auxiliaries. 6. I shall take care that you have as friendly companions as possible. 7. We shall fear that you will not have sufficient protection. 8. The enemy were fearing that we had had a large army. 9. We shall shudder (shudder, have shuddered, shall have shuddered) as if Ariovistus were here. 10. We shall have shuddered (shall shudder, shudder, have shuddered) as if Ariovistus had been here. 11. We had shuddered (were shuddering, shuddered) as if Ariovistus were here. 12. We had shuddered (were shuddering, shuddered) as if Ariovistus had been here.

# SECOND CONJUGATION, BOTH VOICES, IMPERATIVE AND INFINITIVE MOODS, PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

Suggestions.—1. The Imperatives, Infinitives, Participles, Gerund, and Supines of this conjugation are formed by joining the endings already given (Exercise 175) to the proper stem.

- 2. The table below exhibits the use of the infinitive when the apodoses of the Latin sentences numbered 2 and 3 from Exercises 183 to 187 are made dependent on any past tense of a verb of Saying, Thinking, Telling, Perceiving.
- a. Prohibēmus hostīs, { (Respondērunt) eōs hostīs prohibēre, etc., becomes { (They replied) that they were keeping, etc.
- b. Prohibuimus hostīs, etc., becomes (Respondērunt) eōs hostīs prohibuisse, etc. (They replied) that they had kept, etc.

( (Respondērunt) eos hostīs prohibituros c. Prohibēbimus hostīs, etc., becomes (They replied) that they would keep, etc. (Respondērunt) eos hostīs prohibitūros fud. Prohibērēmus hostīs, etc., becomes (They replied) that they would have kept, etc. (Respondērunt) eos habērī, etc. e. Habēmur, etc., be-(They replied) that they were considered, etc. comes (Respondērunt) eos habitos esse, etc. f. Habitī sumus, etc., (They replied) that they had been considered, etc. becomes

#### 191.

1. Monē. Monētō. Monēre. Monētor. 2. Monēre, monuisse, monitūrus (-tūra) (-tūrum) esse; monērī, monitus (-ta) (-tum) esse, monitum īrī. 3. Ego eās rēs memoriā teneō. Caesar dīcit sēsē ¹ eās rēs memoriā tenēre. 4. Ob eam causam tacuī. Liscus prōpōnit sēsē ob eam causam tacuīsse. 5. Amōre frāternō commoveor. Divitiacus dīcit sē amōre frāternō commovērī. 6. Ego obsidibus nōn tenēbar. Divitiacus respondit sē obsidibus nōn tentum esse. 7. Fuga Gallōrum nōs nōn movēbit. Respondērunt fugam Gallōrum sē nōn mōtūram esse. 8. Nostrī, in castrīs manentēs,² hostīs nōn verentur. 9. Dumnorix summam in spem per Helvētiōs regnī obtinendī venit. 10. Cupiditās haec habendī nostrōs cōnfirmāvit. 11. Vultus barbarōrum nostrīs nōn erat facilis vīsū.³

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1336, I. and I. a, 1. 2292. 3303 and Remark; Rule 67.

H.: 1523, I.; Rule LIII. I. 2549, 2 and 4. 3547 and 2, first sentence; Rule LX.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE. Present Tense. PASSIVE VOICE.

Sing. 2. vi dē Sing. 2. vi dē/re
Plur. 2. vi dē/mi nī

#### Future Tense.

Sing. 2 and 3. vi dē'tō Plur. 2. vi dē tō'te Plur. 3. vi den'tō 

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE.

vi dē're

Perfect Tense.

vī dis'se

Future Tense.

vī sū'rus es'se

vī'sum ī'rī

(vī'sus fo're)

#### PARTICIPLES.

ACTIVE VOICE, Present, vi'dēns; Future, vī sū'rus.
PASSIVE VOICE, Perfect, vī'sus; Future, vi den'dus (Gerundive).

Decline vi'dēns like po'tēns, Exercise 85; the other participles as suggested by Exercises 177 and 179.

## THE GERUND AND SUPINES.

N. Gen. vi den'dī, Dat. vi den'dō, Acc. vi den'dum, Abl. vi den'dō. Former Supine, vī'sum; Latter Supine, vī'sū.

## 192.

1. See (thou, you). See (ye, you). Seem (do thou, you). Seem (do ye, you). 2. To see. To have seen. To be about to see. To seem. To have seemed. To be about to seem. 3. We hold our friends in memory. They say that they are holding their friends in memory. 4. We shall be silent for a good reason. They represent that they will be silent for a good reason. 5. He had been influenced by fraternal love. 6. Divitiacus says that he had been influenced by fraternal love. We are not bound (held) by hostages. They reply that they are not bound by

hostages. 7. The flight of the Gauls has not moved us. They replied that the flight of the Gauls had not disturbed (moved) them. 8. While remaining in camp, I shall not fear the enemy. 9. I have the greatest hope (have come into the greatest hope) of obtaining assistance (gerundive). 10. I have the greatest hope of obtaining assistance (gerund). 11. The expression-of-the-countenance is not always pleasant (easy to see).

## RESULT CLAUSES.

Suggestions.—1. Sentences 1 and 2 are Pure Clauses of Result; sentence 3 is a Relative Clause of Result. Translate quī (ut is), 3, that he; quīn (quī nōn), 4, that not or but that; quōminus (ut eō minus, that the less by this) pārēret, 5, from obeying. Sentences 6, 7, and 8 are Clauses of Characteristic.

- 2. Result and Characteristic Clauses take all tenses of the subjunctive.
- 3. Teachers will note remark in Preface, page vii., at middle.

## 193.

1. Tantus¹ timor omnēs occupāvit, ut¹ nostrī in castrīs remanērent.¹ 2. Sīc fortūna versat ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque sit. 3. Nēmō est tam clārus quī² honōribus māiōribus nōn studuerit.³ 4. Nēmō ad bellum tam parātus erat quīn⁴ pācis cupidus esset. 5. Mors cōnsulem clārissimum nōn dēterrēbat quōminus⁵ lēgibus pārēret. 6. Sunt quī⁶ cīvitātī fidēlēs sint. 7. Quis est quī⁶ nōn gaudeat? 8. Tū es sōlus quīⁿ nōn gāvīsus sīs. 9. Dīgnus est quī՞ imperet.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup>319 and 1, also 3, Remark. <sup>2</sup>319 and 2. <sup>3</sup>287, b. <sup>4</sup>319, d. <sup>5</sup>319, c; Rule 75. <sup>6</sup>320 and a. <sup>7</sup>320, b. <sup>8</sup>320, f; Rule 76.

H.: <sup>1</sup>500, II. and Note 1; Rule XLIII. II. <sup>2</sup>500, and I.; Rule XLIII. II. <sup>3</sup>492, 1 and 2. <sup>4</sup>504 and I. <sup>5</sup>505, II. 1. <sup>6</sup>503, II. <sup>6</sup>503, II. 2.

## 194.

1. So great terror seizes all, that our [forces] remain in camp.
2. Fortune so turned that one rival assisted and protected the other (was to the other for assistance and safety). 3. No one was so illustrious that he [did] not (who would not) desire greater honors. 4. No one is so ready for war but that he is desirous of peace. 5. Death [does] not hinder the illustrious consul from obeying (the less by which he should obey) the laws.
6. There were those who had been faithful to the state. 7. Who was [there] that had not rejoiced? 8. We were the only [persons] who did not rejoice. 9. You (plur.) were worthy to command (who should command).

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS AND SYNOPSES.

At this point write and give orally the principal parts and synopses of all verbs of the second conjugation, thus far used. See Principal Parts, page 132.

## THIRD CONJUGATION, BOTH VOICES, INDICATIVE MOOD, TENSES WITH PRESENT STEM.

Suggestions.—1. Verb-stems of the Third Conjugation end in -e-; e.g. tege- (stem of  $teg\bar{o}$ , I conceal), seque- (stem of the deponent sequor, I follow). Learn the inflection of  $teg\bar{o}$  in A. & G., pp. 98 and 99, or of  $reg\bar{o}$  in H., pp. 94 ff.

2. Sentence 1 in 195, 197, 199, may be developed in the common conditional forms.

## 195.

Sī hostīs sequor, eōs vincō.
 Silva māgna hostīs tegit.
 Duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā conscribēbam.
 Oppida nostra omnia, vīcōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendēs.
 Gallī cum Germānīs bella multa gerēbant.
 Multōs annōs¹ dē potentātū contendēmus.
 Num Dumnorigī² custōdēs ponitis?
 Ego Caesarem ex urbe amīcitiae causā sequor.
 Tū fīnibus patriīs expellēbāris (-re).
 Galliā pācātā, noster exercitus in

Britanniam mīttētur. 11. Nõs ad oppidum expūgnandum dēligimur. 12. Alacritāte <sup>3</sup> māgnā et studiō ūtēminī. 13. Eō itinere vix singulī carrī dūcēbantur.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1256; Rule 55. 2225; Rule 21. 3249; Rule 49.

H.: 1379; Rule IX. 2384, II.; Rule XII. II. 3421, I.; Rule XXVI. I.

Pono, I place (Passive, I am placed).

ACTIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	pō'n <b>ō</b>	Plur. 1	1.	pō'n <b>i mus</b>
2.	pō'nis	2	2.	pō'n <b>i tis</b>
3.	pō'nit	3	3.	pō'nunt

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. põ në'bam	Plur. 1. põ n <b>ē bā'mus</b>
2. pō n <b>ē'bās</b>	2. pō n <b>ē bā'tis</b>
3. põ n <b>ë/bat</b>	3. põ n <b>ē'bant</b>

### FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1.	põ'n <b>am</b>	Plur. 1.	pōn <b>ē'mus</b>
2.	pō'n <b>ēs</b>	2.	põ n <b>ē'tis</b>
3.	põ'n <b>et</b>	3.	pō'nent

## PASSIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. pō'nor	Plur. 1. põ n <b>i mur</b>
2. pō'ne ris (-re)	2. põ ni'mi nī
3. pō'ni tur	3. pōnun'tur

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	pō n <b>ē'bar</b>	Plur. 1.	pō n <b>ē bā/mur</b>
2.	pō nē bā'ris (-re)	2.	põ n <b>ē bā'mi nī</b>
3	no ne ha/tur	3	nā n <b>ē ha</b> n/tur

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. pō'nar Plur. 1. pō nē'mur
2. pō nē'ris (-re) 2. pō nē'mi nī
3. pō nē'tur 3. pō ne'tur

#### 196.

1. I shall place a guard over Dumnorix. 2. You (sing.) will contend many days for the chief command. 3. He is waging war with the Gauls. 4. By this route we draw our wagons with difficulty, one by one. 5. Will you (plur.) not select the tenth legion for capturing the stronghold? 6. They were driving us out from our ancestral territory. 7. You (sing.) were concealed by large forests. 8. I shall employ great activity. 9. A new legion was being enrolled in Hither Gaul. 10. We are following Caesar for friendship's sake. 11. Our villages were all being burned. 12. You (plur.) will be sent into Britain when Gaul is subdued.

## THIRD CONJUGATION, BOTH VOICES, INDICATIVE MOOD, REMAINING TENSES.

## 197.

1. Sī hostīs secūtus sum, eōs vīcī. 2. Caesar suōs cohortātus,¹ proelium commīsit. 3. Helvētiī in servitūtem līberōs Haeduōrum abdūxērunt. 4. Locum idōneum castrīs dēlēgerāmus.
5. Summum montis iugum ascendī. 6. Vīrōs multōs et fortissimōs ēdūxerās. 7. Tertiam Galliae partem incolueritis. 8. Multitūdō Germānōrum trāns Rhēnum trānsdūcta est. 9. Nōs ad
flūmen hiemandī causā collocātī sumus. 10. Studiō māgnō et
alacritāte ad hostīs cōnsectandōs ūsus eram. 11. Tū Dumnorigī
custōdem positus eris. 12. Helvētiī cum omnibus carrīs secūtī
erant. 13. Vōs cum legiōne decimā cōnscrīptī eritis.

DIRECTION. — Learn A. & G.: 1111, b; 135, a and b.

H.: 1195, II. 2, and foot-note, first sentence.

## ACTIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. po's	su ī	Plur. 1.	po su'i mus	
2. po	su <b>i'stī</b>	2.	po su i'stis	
3. po/	su it	3.	po su ē'runt	(-re)

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	po su' <b>e ram</b>	Plur. 1.	po su <b>e rā'mus</b>
2.	po su'e rās	2.	po su e rā'tis
3.	po su'e rat	3.	po su'e rant

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	po su' <b>e rō</b>	Plur. 1.	po su e'ri mus
2.	po su' <b>e ris</b>	2.	po su e'ri tis
3.	po su'e rit	3.	po su'e rint

## PASSIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	po'si tus	sum	Plur. 1.	po'si tī	su'mus
2.	po'si tus	es	2.	po'si tī	e'stis
3.	po'si tus	est	3.	po'si tī	sunt

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	po'si tus	e'ram	Plur. 1.	po'si tī	e rā'mus
2.	po'si tus	e'rās	2.	po'si tī	e rā'tis
3.	po'situs	e'rat	3.	$\mathrm{po}'\mathbf{si}\;\mathbf{t}\overline{\mathbf{i}}$	e'rant

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	po'si tus	e'rō	Plur. 1.	po'si tī e'ri mu	S
2.	po'si tus	e'ris	2.	po'si'tī e'ri tis	
3.	po'si tus	e'rit	3.	po'si tī e'runt	

## 198.

1. The Helvetii having encouraged their (men) had joined battle. 2. The children of the Haedui have been led away into servitude by the Helvetii. 3. A suitable place will have been selected for a camp. 4. We shall have ascended the highest ridge of the hill. 5. I have led out many legions from winter

quarters. 6. You (plur.) have inhabited one part of Gaul. 7. You (plur.) will have been led over the bridge in company with the remaining forces. 8. We had been located among the Belgae for the sake of spending the winter. 9. I had employed the same leaders for pursuing the enemy. 10. You (sing.) will have placed a guard over Dumnorix. 11. You (sing.) have followed the enemy to the fortifications. 12. Caesar had enrolled three new legions.

# THIRD CONJUGATION, BOTH VOICES, SUBJUNCTIVE, IMPERATIVE, AND INFINITIVE MOODS, PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

Suggestions.—1. The verbs in sentences 2 to 6 inclusive (except petunt, 4) may be inflected in place.

2. The Sequence of Tenses should be carefully studied.

## 199.

1. Sī hostīs sequar, eōs vincam. 2. Vereor nē¹ Divitiacī animum offendam. 3. Verēbar nē Divitiacī animum offenderem.
4. Haeduī petunt ut clēmentiā in Bellovacōs ūtar. 5. Vereor ut¹ clēmentiā dīgnā māiestāte populī Rōmānī ūsus sim. 6. Vērēbar ut clēmentiā ūsus essem. 7. Dūc² tēcum reliquōs obsidēs.
8. Caesar, petentibus Haeduīs,³ ut Boiōs in fīnibus suīs collocent, concēdit. 9. Galba, castellīs complūribus hostium expūgnātīs, mīssīs ad eum undique lēgātīs, obsidibusque datīs, cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre cōnstituit. 10. Divitiacus Haeduus dīxit Haeduōs⁴ omnem nōbilitātem āmīsisse et sē⁴ Rōmam ad senātum mīssum esse auxilium postulātum.⁵ 11. Caesar dīcit sē hostīs sequī et Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum (esse).⁶ 12. Summa alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī (bellum gerendī) innāta est.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup>331, f and Note. <sup>2</sup>128, c. <sup>8</sup> Rule 21. <sup>4</sup>272; Rule 60. <sup>5</sup>302; Rule 66. <sup>6</sup>293, a.

H.: <sup>1</sup>498, III. and Note 1. <sup>2</sup>238. <sup>8</sup> Rule XII. <sup>4</sup> Rule LIII. I. <sup>5</sup>546; Rule LIX. <sup>6</sup>534, Note.

## ACTIVE VOICE, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	pō'n <b>am</b>	Plur. 1. pō nā'mus
2.	pō'n <b>ās</b>	2. pō n <b>ā'tis</b>
3.	pō'nat	3. pō'nant

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. pō'ne rem	Plur. 1. pō n <b>e rē'mus</b>
2. pō'n <b>e rēs</b>	2. pō n <b>e rē'tis</b>
3. pō'ne ret	3. pô'ne rent

## PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	po su'e rim	Plur. 1.	po su e'ri mus
2.	posu'e ris	2.	po su e'ri tis
3.	posu'e rit	3.	po su' <b>e rint</b>

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing.	1.	po su is'sem	Plur.	1.	po su is sē'mus
	2.	po su is'sēs		2.	po su is sē'tis
	3.	po su is'set		3.	po su is'sent

## Passive Voice, Subjunctive Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	pō'nar	Plur. 1	١.	pō n <b>ā'mur</b>
2.	pō nā'ris (-re)	2	2.	põ n <b>ā'mi nī</b>
3.	pō nā'tur	5	3.	pō nan'tur

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. pō'ne rer	Plur. 1. pō ne rē/mur
2. pō ne rē'ris (-re)	2. pō n <b>e rē'mi nī</b>
3. põ n <b>e rē</b> 'tur	3. pō ne ren'tur

## PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. po'si tus	sim	Plur. 1.	po'si tī	sī'mus
2. po'si tus	sīs	2.	po'si tī	sī'tis
3. po'si tus	sit	3.	po'si tī	sint

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. po'si tus es'sem

Plur. 1. po'si tī essē'mus

2. po'si tus es'sēs

2. po'si tī es sē'tis

3. po'si tus es'set

3. po'sitī es'sent

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Present Tense.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Sing. 2. pō'ne Plur. 2. pō'ni te Sing. 2. pō/nere Plur. 2. pō ni/mi nī

### Future Tense.

Sing. 2 and 3. pō'ni tō Plur. 2. pō ni tō te Plur. 3. pō nun'tō Sing. 2 and 3. pō'ni tor Plur. 2.

Plur. 3. pō nun'tor

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE.
pō'ne re

Present Tense.

PASSIVE VOICE.

pō'n**ī** 

Perfect Tense.

po su is'se

po'si tus es'se

Future Tense.

po'si tū'rus es'se

po'si tum ī'rī (po'si tus fo're)

#### PARTICIPLES.

ACTIVE VOICE, Pres. pō'nēns; Fut. po si tū'rus. PASSIVE VOICE, Perf. po'si tus; Fut. pō nen'dus (Gerundive).

## THE GERUND AND SUPINES.

N. Gen. pō nen'dī, Dat. pō nen'dō, Acc. pō nen'dum, Abl. pō nen'dō. Former Supine, po'si tum; Latter Supine, po'si tū.

## 200.

1. Caesar fears that he has hurt the feelings (sing.) of Divitiacus. 2. Caesar feared that he had hurt the feelings of Divitiacus. 3. I have often asked that you (sing.) exercise

kindness worthy the majesty of the Roman people. 4. I used to fear that you (plur.) [did] not exercise kindness towards the Helvetii. 5. Place (plur.) faithful guards over Dumnorix (dative). 6. Caesar has granted at my request (to me asking) that we locate the Boii in our territory. 7. Caesar, many towns of the Gauls having been captured, determined to wage war with the Germans. 8. Divitiacus says that the state is losing all the nobility and that he is sent to Rome to ask (supine) assistance. 9. Caesar said that he had not neglected the wrongs of the Haedui and that he would follow the enemy. 10. The leading men said that they were quite ready for (ad) waging war.

## VERBS IN -IO, THIRD CONJUGATION.

Suggestions. — 1. These verbs differ from other verbs of this conjugation in certain tenses formed from the present stem.

2. The inflection of capiō is to be carefully committed from A. & G., page 100; H., Sections 218, 219.

3. Translate sementes faciam, 2, I shall sow; consilium facient, 7, will adopt the plan; terga vertunt, 8, turn and flee.

## 201.

1. Sī Caesarem interficiō, nobilibus grātum faciō. 2. Sēmentēs quam māximās faciam. 3. Allobrogės quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habent, fugā sē¹ ad Caesarem recipiunt. 4. Nōs et Haeduīs² et Allobrogibus satisfaciēbāmus. 5. Hostēs fugientēs³ capiuntur et in catēnīs cōniciuntur. 6. Cōnantēs dīcere in catēnīs cōniciēbāmur. 7. Helvētiī cōnsilium itineris faciendī (iter faciendī) per provinciam capient. 8. Hostēs multa volnera accipiunt tum cum⁴ terga vertunt. 9. Praefectus, cum trīduum⁵ iter fēcimus, locum idōneum castrīs dēligit. 10. Praefectus, cum iter facerēmus, locum idōneum castrīs dēlēgit. 11. Praefectus, cum trīduum iter fēcissēmus, locum idōneum castrīs dēlēgit. 12. Postrīdiē ēius diēī⁶ Caesar, priusquam⁶ sē hostēs ex terrōre āc fugā reciperent, in fīnīs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit. 13. Prīncipēs Britanniae id optimum factū dūxērunt.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1196; Rule 7. 2227, e, 2. 3292. 4325; Rule 78. 5 Rule 55. 6223, e. 7327. H.: 1448; 449. 2384, 4, Note 1. 3549, I. 4521, I.; Rule LII. I. 5 Rule IX. 6398, 5. 7520, I.1; Rule LI. I. 1.

Recipio, I take back (Passive, is taken back).

## ACTIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. re ci'piō
 Plur. 1. re ci'pi mus

 2. re'ci pis
 2. re ci'pi tis

 3. re'ci pit
 3. re ci'pi unt

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. re ci pi ē/bam
 Plur. 1. re ci pi ē bā/mus

 2. re ci pi ē/bās
 2. re ci pi ē bā/tis

 3. re ci pi ē/bat
 3. re ci pi ē/bant

## FUTURE TENSE.

 Sing. 1. re ci'pi am
 Plur. 1. re ci pi ē'mus

 2. re ci'pi ēs
 2. re ci pi ē'tis

 3. re ci'pi et
 3. re ci'pi ent

## PERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. re cē/pī
 Plur. 1. re cē/pi mus

 2. re cē pi/stī
 2. re cē pi/stis

 3. re cē/pit
 3. re cē pē/runt (-re)

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. re cē/pe ram
 Plur. 1. re cē pe rā/mus

 2. re cē/pe rās
 2. re cē pe rā/tis

 3. re cē/pe rat
 3. re cē/pe rant

#### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. re cē/pe rō
 Plur. 1. re cē pe/ri mus

 2. re cē/pe ris
 2. re cē pe/ri tis

 3. re cē/pe rit
 3. re cē/pe rint

## PASSIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	re ci'p <b>i or</b>	Plur. 1.	re ci'p <b>i mur</b>
2.	re ci'pe ris (-re)	2.	re ci pi'mi nī
3.	re ci'pi tur	3.	recipiun'tur

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	re ci p <b>i ē'bar</b>	Plur. 1.	re ci p <b>i ē bā/mur</b>
2.	re ci pi ē bā'ris (-re)	2.	re ci p <b>i ē bā'mi nī</b>
3.	re ci p <b>i ē bā'tur</b>	3.	re ci p <b>i ē ban'tur</b>

## FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. re ci'pi ar	Plur. 1. re ci pi ē'mur
2. re ci pi ē'ris (-re)	2. re ci pi <b>ē</b> 'mi n <b>ī</b>
3. re ci pi ē'tur	3. re ci pi en'tur

## PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. re cep't	tus sum	Plur. 1. re cep'tī su'mus
2. re cep's	tus es	2. re cep'tī e'stis
3. re cep'	tus est	3. recep'tī sunt

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	re cep'tus	e'ram	Plur. 1.	$re cep't\overline{\imath}$	e rā'mus
2.	${\tt re} \; {\tt cep'tus}$	e'rās	2.	re cep'tī	e rā'tis
3.	$\mathbf{re}\mathbf{cep'tus}$	e'rat	3.	$re cep't\overline{\imath}$	e'rant

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. re cep'tus	e'rō	Plur. 1.	$\mathrm{re}\mathrm{cep}' t \overline{\imath}$	$e^\prime rimus$
2. re cep'tus	e'ris	2.	$\mathrm{re}\mathrm{cep}' t\overline{\imath}$	e'ri tis
3. re cep'tus	e'rit	3.	${\tt re~cep't\overline{\i}}$	e'runt

## ACTIVE VOICE, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1.	re ci'p <b>i am</b>	Plur. 1.	re ci pi ā'mus
2.	re ci'p <b>i ās</b>	2.	re ci p <b>i ā'tis</b>
3.	re ci'pi at	3.	re ci'p <b>i ant</b>

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. reci'perem
2. reci'perës
3. reci'peret
Plur. 1. reci perë'mus
2. reci perë'tis
3. reci'perent

#### PERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. re cē/pe rim
 Plur. 1. re cē pe/ri mus

 2. re cē/pe ris
 2. re cē pe/ri tis

 3. re cē/pe rit
 3. re cē/pe rint

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. re cē pis/sem
 Plur. 1. re cē pis sē/mus

 2. re cē pis/sēs
 2. re cē pis sē/tis

 3. re cē pis/set
 3. re cē pis/sent

## Passive Voice, Subjunctive Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. re ci/pi ar
 Plur. 1. re ci pi ā/mur

 2. re ci pi ā/ris (-re)
 2. re ci pi ā/mi nī

 3. re ci pi ā/tur
 3. re ci pi an/tur

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. re ci'pe rer

2. re ci pe rē'ris (-re)

3. re ci pe rē'tur

Plur. 1. re ci pe rē'mur

2. re ci pe rē'mi nī

3. re ci pe re'tur

3. re ci pe ren'tur

## PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. re cep'tus sim

2. re cep'tus sīs

3. re cep'tus sit

Plur. 1. re cep'tī sī'mus

2. re cep'tī sī'tis

3. re cep'tī sint

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. re cep'tus es'sem
2. re cep'tus es'sēs
3. re cep'tus es'set
2. re cep'tī es sē'tus
3. re cep'tī es'sent

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE. Present Tense. PASSIVE VOICE.

Sing. 2. re'ci pe
Plur. 2. re ci'pi te

Plur. 2. re ci pi'mi nī

#### Future Tense.

Sing. 2 and 3. re ci'pi to Plur. 2. re ci pi to'te Plur. 3. re ci pi un'to

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE.	Present Tense.	PASSIVE VOICE.
re ci'p <b>e re</b>	1	re'ci pī
	Perfect Tense.	
re cē pis'se	1	re cep'tus es'se
	Future Tense.	
re cep tū'rus es'se		re cep'tum ī'rī
		re cep'tus fo're

#### PARTICIPLES.

ACTIVE VOICE, Pres. re ci'pi ēns; Fut. re cep tū'rus PASSIVE VOICE, Perf. re cep'tus; Fut. re ci pi en'dus (Gerundive).

### THE GERUND AND SUPINES.

N. Gen. re ci pi en'dī, Dat. re ci pi en'dō, Acc. re ci pi en'dum, Abl. re ci pi en'dō.

Former Supine, re cep'tum. Latter Supine, re cep'tū.

## 202.

1. The enemy are making as long marches as possible.
2. You who had possessions beyond the Rhine were betaking yourselves to Caesar.
3. I shall make amends to Caesar.
4. The ambassadors, endeavoring to do this which they had

determined [upon], are thrown into chains. 5. Caesar adopts the plan of making a march through Gaul. 6. Then you will receive many wounds, when you turn and flee (fut. perf.). 7. The enemy, when they have made a three days' march, select a suitable place for a camp. 8. The enemy, when they had made a three days' march, selected a suitable place for a camp. 9. The lieutenants who had led their legions into the territory of the Suessiones betook themselves to Caesar before the enemy had recovered from the fright. 10. This is not easy to do (supine).

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS AND SYNOPSES.

At this point review and commit thoroughly the principal parts and synopses of all verbs of the Third Conjugation thus far used. Let nothing interfere with complete mastery of the verb forms.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION, BOTH VOICES, INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUGGESTIONS.—1. Verb-stems of the Fourth Conjugation end in -ī-; e.g. audī- (stem of audiō, I hear), experī- (stem of experior, I try). The inflection of audiō is to be learned from A. & G., pp. 104 and 105, H., 98 ff.

- 2. Sentence 1, Exercises 203, 205, may be developed in the common conditional forms.
- 3. Translate non solum . . . sed etiam, 4, not only . . . but also; in contemptionem veniëtis, 4, you will incur the contempt; quam ob rem, 5, why; per insidias, 10, treacherously; frumentum metiar, 12, I shall distribute rations.

## 203.

1. Sī veniō, bellī fortūnam experior. 2. Quid dē hāc rē audīs (audiēbas, audiēs, audīvistī, audīverās, audīveris)? 3. Nostrī sociī audientēs quās iniūriās hostēs faciēbant, ad Caesarem veniēbant. 4. Vōs nōn sōlum hostibus sed etiam nostrīs¹ in contemptionem veniētis. 5. Quam ob rem lēgātus castra nōn mūnīvit? 6. Cum ego vēnerō,² castra vallō fossāque mūniam. 7. Nōs iam per angustiās et fīnīs Sēquanōrum nostrās cōpiās trā-

dūxerāmus et in Haeduōrum fīnīs pervēnerāmus eōrumque agrōs populābāmur. 8. Quod³ ubī audītum est, conclāmāvit omnēs victōriam. 9. Ego cōpiās meās cum C. Fabiō partiar. 10. Nostrī per īnsidiās circumveniēbantur. 11. Tōtīus Galliae imperiō potītī sumus. 12. Cum cōpiās partītī eritis, frūmentum mētiar. 13. Quam ob rem frūmentum mīlitibus nōn mēnsus erās?

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1225, b, 2. 2281 and Remark. 3201, e. H.: 1384, 4. 2473, 1. 3453.

Mūnio, I fortify (Passive, is fortified).

ACTIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. mū/niō
 Plur. 1. mū nī/ mus

 2. mū/nis
 2. mū nī/tis

 3. mū/nit
 3. mū/ni unt

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. mū ni ē'bam
 Plur. 1. mū ni ē bā'mus

 2. mū ni ē'bās
 2. mū ni ē bā'tis

 3. mū ni ē'bat
 3. mū ni ē'bant

## FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. mū/ni am Plur. 1. mū ni ē'mus
2. mū/ni ēs 2. mū ni ē'tis
3. mū/ni et 3. mū/ni ent

## PERFECT TENSE (1st form).

 Sing. 1. mū nī/vī
 Plur. 1. mū nī/vi mus

 2. mū nī vi/stī
 2. mū nī vi/stis

 3. mū nī/vit
 3. mū nī vē/runt (-re)

## PERFECT TENSE (2d form).

 Sing. 1. mū/ni ī
 Plur. 1. mū ni/i mus

 2. mū ni i/stī
 2. mū ni i/stis

 3. mū/ni it
 3. mū ni ē/runt (-re)

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. mū nī/ve ram
 Plur. 1. mū nī ve rā/mus

 2. mū nī/ve rās
 2. mū nī ve rā/tis

3. mū nī've rat 3. mū nī've rant

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. mū nī/ve rō
 Plur. 1. mū nī ve/ri mus

 2. mū nī/ve ris
 2. mū nī ve/ri tis

 3. mū nī/ve rit
 3. mū nī/ve rint

## Passive Voice, Indicative Mood.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mū/ni or Plur. 1. mū nī/mur
2. mū nī/ris (-re) 2. mū nī/minī
3. mū nī/tur 3. mū ni un/tur

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

3. mū ni ē bā'tur 3. mū ni ē ban'tur

## FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. mū/ni ar Plur. 1. mū ni ē/mur
2. mū ni ē/ris (-re) 2. mū ni ē/mi nī
3. mū ni ē/tur 3. mū ni en/tur

## PERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. mū nī/tus sum
 Plur. 1. mū nī/tī su/mus

 2. mū nī/tus es
 2. mū nī/tī e/stis

 3. mū nī/tus est
 3. mū nī/tī sunt

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mū nī/tus e/ram Plur. 1. mū nī/tī e rā/mus
2. mū nī/tus e/rās
2. mū nī/tī e rā/tis
3. mū nī/tī e/rant

### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mū nī/tus e/rō Plur. 1. mū nī/tī e/ri mus
2. mū nī/tus e/ris
2. mū nī/tus e/rit
3. mū nī/tī e/runt

### 204.

1. The enemy are surrounding us treacherously. 2. We were reaching the vicinity of (ad) Vesontio. 3. You (sing.) will hear concerning (dē) this thing. 4. I have fortified my house by a rampart. 5. You (plur.) will have surrounded our forces on (ex) the march. 6. The day which Caesar had determined with the ambassadors came. 7. When Caesar arrives, I shall have obtained possession of the town. 8. You (sing.) had tried the same fortune of war. 9. No voice was heard unworthy of the majesty of the Roman people. 10. We shall always measure great men by valor, not by [good] fortune. 11. You (plur.) who have remained in camp are surrounded by the enemy. 12. The consuls have distributed the provinces among themselves.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION, REMAINING MOODS AND FORMS.

## 205.

1. Sī veniam, bellī fortūnam experiar. 2. Caesar hōc audiēns nōn exspectat dum¹ in Santonēs Helvētiī perveniant. 3. Hōc faciam dum modō² (dummodō) vōs ab hostibus nē circumveniāminī. 4. Līterās ad Caesarem mīsimus antequam³ in Ītaliam venīrēmus. 5. Līterās ad Caesarem ante⁴ mīsī quam⁴ in Ītaliam vēnissem. 6. Illī nōn dēstitērunt priusquam tōtīus Galliae⁵ potīrentur. 7. Vōs nōn prius dēstitistis quam rērum potītī essētis. 8. Tametsī⁶ ab duce nostrō dēserēbāmur, tamen bellī fortūnam experiēbāmur. 9. Etsī rēs sit multae labōris, tamen frūmentum mīlitibus mētiāmur. 10. Nisi pervēneris,7 castra mūniam. 11. Caesar dīcit sēsē castra mūnītūrum, nisi pervēneris.8 12. Caesar dīxit sē potiundī (potiendī) oppidī causā vēnisse. 13. Hōc est nefās etiam audītū.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1328. 2314 and a; Rule 73. 327. 4262. 5223, a. 6313, c. 7307, c. 8336 and 2; Rule 80; 286, Re-

mark (b), last part.

H.: 1519, II. 2; Rule L. II. 2. 2513, I.; Rule XLV. I. 8520 and II.: Rule LI. II. 4520, foot-note 1. 5410, V. and 3. 6515, II.; Rule XLVI. <sup>7</sup> 508, 2. 8524; Rule LIV.; 525, 2.

## ACTIVE VOICE, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mū/ni am Plur. 1. mū ni ā/mus 2. mū'ni ās 2. mū ni ā'tis 3. mū/ni at 3. mū/ni ant

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mū nī'rem Plur. 1. mū nī rē/mus 2. mū nī/rēs 2. mū nī rē'tis 3. mū nī/ret 3. mū nī/rent

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mū nī've rim Plur. 1. mū nī ve'ri mus 2. mū nī've ris 2. mū nī ve/ri tis 3. mi ni/ve rit 3. mū nī've rint

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mū nī vis'sem Plur. 1. mūnī vis sē'mus 2. mū nī vis'sēs 2. mū nī vis sē'tis 3. mū nī vis'set 3. mū nī vis'sent

## Passive Voice, Subjunctive Mood.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mū'ni ar Plur. 1. mū ni ā'mur 2. mū ni ā'ris (-re) 2. mūni ā'minī 3. mūniā'tur

3. mū ni an'tur

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mūnī/rer

Plur. 1. mū nī rē/mur

2. mū nī rē'ris (-re)

2. mū nī rē'mi nī

3. mū nī rē'tur

3. mūnī ren'tur

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mū nī'tus sim

Plur. 1. mūnī/tī sī/mus

2. mū nī'tus sīs

2. mū nī'tī sī'tis

3. mūnī'tus sit

3. mūnī'tī sint

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mūnī/tus es/sem Plur. 1. mūnī/tī es sē/mus

2. mū nī'tus es'sēs

2. mū nī'tī es sē'tis

3. mū nī/tus es/set

3. mū nī'ti es'sent

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Present Tense.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Sing. 2. mū'nī Plur. 2. mū nī/te Sing. 2. mū nī're Plur, 2, mū nī/mi nī

## Future Tense.

Sing. 2 and 3. mūnī'tō

Sing. 2 and 3. mū nī/tor

Plur. 2. mū nī to'te Plur. 3. mū ni un'tō Plur. 2. —— Plur. 3. mū ni un'tor

INFINITIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Present Tense.

PASSIVE VOICE.

mū nī're

mū nī'rī

Perfect Tense.

mū nī vis'se

mūnī/tus es/se

Future Tense.

mū nī tū'rus es'se

mū nī'tum ī'rī mū nī'tus fo're

#### PARTICIPLES.

ACTIVE VOICE, Pres. mū'ni ēns; Fut. mū nī tū'rus Passive Voice, Perf. mū nī'tus; Fut. mū ni en'dus (Gerundive).

#### THE GERUND AND SUPINES.

N., Gen. mū ni en'dī, Dat. mū ni en'dō, Acc. mū ni en'dum, Abl. mū ni en'dō.

Former Supine, mū nī'tum. Latter Supine, mū nī'tū.

#### 206.

1. The enemy will not wait until I have reached [the country of the Santones. 2. We shall do this provided the camp is fortified. 3. I sent a scout to Vesontio before I came into Gaul. 4. We sent scouts to Avaricum before we had come into the province. 5. You (sing.) [did] not stop before (earlier than) you had become masters of all Gaul. 6. Our consuls [did] not stop before they had become masters of affairs. 7. Although our forces were being abandoned by their leaders, still they tried the fortune of war. 8. Even if the task had been great (if the thing had been of great labor) we should have distributed rations to the army. 9. Unless new legions arrive, we shall fortify the camp. 10. The commanders say that, unless new legions arrive, they will fortify the camp. 11. Our leaders say that they will try the fortune of war, unless they secure the authority. 12. Caesar says that he will come for the sake of obtaining possession of the town.

# POSSUM, VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ.

SUGGESTIONS.—1. In translating the forms of possum, can and could should be commonly used; e.g. prohibëre possunt, 1, can keep from. But translate plūrimum poterat, 2, was the most powerful man (was able the most).

2. Find the inflection of these verbs at the end of Exercise 207.

# 207.

1. Perpaucī exercitum itinere facile prohibēre possunt. 2. Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat. 3. Nōn est dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possint. 4. Nostrī sequī¹nōn potuērunt. 5. Lēgātī dīcunt nostrōs sequī nōn potuisse. 6. Sī quid voltis ad Īd.² Apr. (Īdūs Aprīlīs) revertere. 7. Sī interficī nōn voltis, arma pōnite. 8. Pūgnāre³ quam servīre mālumus. 9. Sī veteris contumēliae⁴ oblīviscī volō, recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere nōn possum. 10. Ego nūllī iter per prōvinciam dare possum,⁵ sī volam. 11. Caesar negat sē posse⁵ ūllī iter per prōvinciam dare sī velit.⁵

Directions. — Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup>271; Rule 59. <sup>2</sup>376, a, b, c, d. <sup>8</sup>331, b and 1. <sup>4</sup>219; Rule 19. <sup>5</sup>307, d. <sup>6</sup>304, c. <sup>7</sup>337, 1; Rule 80.

H.: <sup>1</sup>533 and I. 1, 2; Rule LVI. <sup>2</sup>642, I. 1, 2, 3, II. <sup>8</sup>498, I. and Note. <sup>4</sup>406, II.; Rule XIX. II. <sup>5</sup>511 and 1. <sup>6</sup>527 and I. <sup>7</sup>524; Rule LIV.

Possum, I am able (I can).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. pos/sum
 Plur. 1. pos/su mus

 2. po/tes
 2. po te/stis

 3. po/test
 3. pos/sunt

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. po'te ram
 Plur. 1. po te rā'mus

 2. po'te rās
 2. po te rā'tis

 3. po'te rat
 3. po'te rant

# FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. po'terō Plur. 1. po te'ri mus
2. po'te ris
2. po te'ri tis
3. po'te rit
3. po'te runt

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. po'tuī Plur. 1. po tu'i mus
2. po tu i'stī
3. po'tu it
3. po tu ē'runt (-re)

# PLUPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. po tu'e ram
 Plur. 1. po tu e rā'mus

 2. po tu'e rās
 2. po tu e rā'tis

 3. po tu'e rat
 3. po tu'e rant

#### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. po tu'e rō
 Plur. 1. po tu e'ri mus

 2. po tu'e ris
 2. po tu e'ri tis

 3. po tu'e rit
 3. po tu'e rint

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

# PRESENT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. pos/sim
 Plur. 1. pos sī/mus

 2. pos/sīs
 2. pos sī/tis

 3. pos/sit
 3. pos/sint

# IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. pos/sem

2. pos/sēs

3. pos/set

Plur. 1. pos sē/mus

2. pos sē/tis

3. pos/set

3. pos/sent

# PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. po tu'e rim

2. po tu'e ris

3. po tu'e rit

2. po tu e'ri tis

3. po tu'e rit

3. po tu'e rint

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. po tu is/sem
2. po tu is/ses
3. po tu is/set
3. po tu is/sent

# (No IMPERATIVE.)

#### INFINITIVES.

Pres. pos'se

Perf. po tu is/se

# PARTICIPLE (as adjective).

Pres. po'tēns

#### Volo, I am willing (I wish).

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. vo'lō

Plur. 1. vo'lu mus

2. **vīs** 3. volt (vult) 2. vol'tis (vul tis)

3. vo'lunt

# IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. volē'bam

2. volē'bās

3. vo le'bat

Plur. 1. vo lē bā'mus

2. volē bā'tis

3. vo le'bant

# FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. vo'lam

2. vo'lēs

3. vo'let

Plur. 1. volē/mus

2. volē'tis

3. vo'lent

# PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. vo'luī

2. volui'stī

3. vo'luit

Plur. 1. volu'i mus

2. vo lu i'stis

3. volu ë'runt (-re)

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. volu'e ram

2. volu'e rās

3. volu'e rat

Plur. 1. vo lu e rā'mus

2. volu e rā'tis

3. volu'e rant

#### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. volu'e rō

Plur. 1. volu e'ri mus

2. volu'e ris

2. volu e'ri tis

3. vo lu'e rit

3. volu'e rint

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. ve'lim

Plur. 1. ve lī/mus

2. ve'līs
3. ve'lit

2. ve lī'tis
3. ve'lint

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. vel'lem

Plur. 1. vellē'mus

2. vel'lēs

2. vel lē'tis

3. vel'let

3. vel'lent

# PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. volu'e rim

Plur. 1. volu e'ri mus

2. volu'e ris
3. volu'e rit

2. volue'ri tis
3. volu'e rint

# PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. voluis'sem

Plur. 1. volu is sē'mus

2. voluis'sēs

2. volu is sē'tis

3. voluis'set

3. voluis'sent

(No IMPERATIVE.)

Infinitives.

Pres. vel'le

Perf. vo lu is'se

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. vo'lēns

#### Nolo, I am unwilling.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. nō'lō Plur. 1. nō'lu mus

2. non vis 2. non vol'tis (vul'tis)

3. non volt (vult) 3. no'lunt

# IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. nō lē/bam Plur. 1. nō lē bā/mus

2. nō lē'bās 2. nō lē bā'tis

3. nō lē'bat 3. nō lē'bant

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. no'lam Plur. 1. no le'mus

2. nō'lēs 2. nō lē'tis

3. nō'let 3. nō'lent

# PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. nō'luī Plur. 1. nō lu'i mus

2. nō lu i'stī 2. nō lu i'stis

3. nō/lu it 3. nō lu ē'runt (-re)

# PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. no lu'e ram Plur. 1. no lu e ra'mus

2. nō lu'erās 2. nō lu e rā'tis

3. no lu'e rat 3. no lu'e rant

#### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. no lu'e ro Plur. 1. no lu e'ri mus

2. nō lu'e ris 2. nō lu e'ri tis

3. nolu'erit 3. nolu'erint

# SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

# PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. nö'lim Plur. 1. nö lī'mus

2. nō/līs 2. nō lī/tis

3. nō/lit 3. nō/lint

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. nöl'lem

Plur. 1. nol le'mus

2. nõl'lēs

2. nöl lē'tis

3. nöl'let

3. nöl'lent

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. no lu'e rim

Plur. 1. nolu e'ri mus

2. no lu'e ris

2. nō lu e'ri tis

3. no lu'e rit

3. no lu'e rint

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. no lu is/sem

Plur. 1. no lu is se'mus

2. nō lu is'sēs

2. no lu is sē'tis

3. nōluis/set

3. noluis/sent

# IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Sing. 2. no'lī

Plur. 2. nō lī/te

Fut. Sing. 2 and 3. no lī/to

Plur. 2. nölītō'te

# INFINITIVES.

Pres. nol'le

Perf. nō lu is'se

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. nō'lēns

# Mālō, I wish rather (I prefer).

# INDICATIVE MOOD.

# PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mā/lō
2. mā/vīs

Plur. 1. mā'lu mus

3. mā'volt (-vult)

2. mā vol'tis (-vul'tis)
3. mā'lunt

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mālē'bam

Plur. 1. mā lē bā'mus

mā lē/bās
 mā lē/bat

2. mā lē bā/tis 3. mā lē/bant

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. mā/lam

2. mā'lēs

3. mā'let

Plur. 1. mā lē'mus

2. mā lē'tis

3. mā'lent

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mā'lu ī

2. mā lu i'stī 3. mā'lu it Plur. 1. mā lu'i mus

2. mā lu i'stis

3. mā lu ē'runt (-re)

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mā lu'e ram

mā lu'e rās
 mā lu'e rat

Plur. 1. mā lu e rā'mus

mā lu e rā'tis
 mā lu'e rant

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mā lu'e rō

2. mā lu'e ris 3. mā lu'e rit Plur. 1. mā lu e'ri mus

2. mā lu e'ri tis 3. mā lu'e rint

# SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

# PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mā'lim

2. mā'līs 3. mā'lit Plur. 1. mā lī'mus

2. mā lī'tis 3. mā'lint

# IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. māl'lem

māl'lēs
 māl'let

Plur. 1. māl lē'mus

2. māl lē'tis 3. māl'lent

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mālu'e rim

mā lu'e ris
 mā lu'e rit

Plur. 1. mā lu e'ri mus

2. mā lu e'ri tis

3. mā lu'e rint

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. mālu is'sem

Plur. 1. mā lu is sē'mus

2. mā lu is'sēs

2. mā lu is sē'tis

3. mā lu is'set

3. mā lu is/sent

(No Imperative.)

INFINITIVES.

Pres. māl'le

Perf. mā lu is'se

(No Participles.)

# 208.

1. A very few could (were able to) keep our legions from the journey. 2. Dumnorix has been the most powerful man (has been able the most) among the Sequani. 3. There was no doubt that the Helvetii had been the most powerful people of all Gaul. 4. The auxiliaries cannot (are not able to) follow the enemy. 5. The leader says that the auxiliaries cannot follow the enemy. 6. If you (sing.) wish anything, return on the thirteenth day of April. 7. If you (sing.) [do] not wish to be put to death, lay down your arms. 8. I prefer to fight [rather] than to turn and flee. 9. If we shall be willing to forget the former insult, we cannot (are not able to) lay aside the memory of recent injuries. 10. We can give (are able to give) no one a way through the province, if we [shall] wish. 11. The commanders say that they cannot give to any one a way through the province, if they wish.

# IMPERSONAL VERBS. HISTORICAL INFINITIVES.

Suggestion. — In connection with Impersonal Verbs, A. & G. 145, 146, a, b, c, and d; H. 298, 300, 301 and 1 should be carefully studied.

# 209.

1. Caesaris 1 māximē interest, manūs hostium distinērī.<sup>4</sup> 2. Nihil 2 meā 3 intererat, manūs hostium distinērī.<sup>4</sup> 3. Sī volt mēcum conloquī, licet. 4. Sī velim in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, liceat. 5. Poenam, ut 5 īgnī cremārētur, eum damnātum 6 sequī oportēbat. 6. Cōpiāsne 7 adversum hostem dūcere, an 7 castra dēfendere, an 7 fugā salūtem petere praestat ? 7. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, 8 impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. 8. Nostrī sēsē in castra, ut erat imperātum, 9 recēpērunt. 9. Hanc Galliae partem Gallōs obtinēre dictum est. 10. Id b aliquot dē causīs accidēbat, ut 10 subitō Gallī bellī renovandī cōnsilium caperent. 11. Ea rēs b meritō populī Rōmānī nōn accidit. 12. Omnibus cōnstat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre. 12 13. Diem ex diē dūcere 13 Haeduī. 14. Haeduī dīcere frūmentum adesse.

Direction. — Read A. & G.: \*29, c; 270 (1) and b. \* 145 and foot-note.

H.: a 42, Note; 538 and 1. b 298, footnote 5.

Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup>222. <sup>2</sup>238 and b; Rule 31. <sup>8</sup>222, a. <sup>4</sup>270; Rule 58. <sup>5</sup>329. <sup>6</sup>292. <sup>7</sup>211. <sup>8</sup>145; 146, d. <sup>9</sup>230. <sup>10</sup>332, f. <sup>11</sup>Rule 35. <sup>12</sup>Rule 13. <sup>18</sup>275.

H.: 1406, III.; Rule XIX. III. 2378; Rule VIII. 8408, I. 2. 4538. 5501 and III. 6549, 1. 7353, 1, 2 and Note 5. 8298; 301 and 1. 9384, 5. 10501 and III. 11538 and 2. 12 Rule III. 13536, 1.

# 210.

1. It especially concerned the republic that (inf.) we come as soon as possible. 2. It concerns you not at all that I have come. 3. If he wishes to try the fortune of war, [it] will be permitted. 4. If you (sing.) had wished to settle in the territory of the Ubii, [it] would have been permitted. 5. [It] is fitting that (inf.) the punishment of being burned to death (that he be burned by

fire) be inflicted upon him when condemned (to follow him condemned). 6. Was [it] better that I had led (to have led) the forces against the enemy, or had sought safety in flight? 7. You (plu.) will obtain possession of the town when the engagement shall have continued a long time (when [it] shall have been fought a long time). 8. We are betaking ourselves to camp according to command (as [it] has been commanded). 9. [It] was evident to all that we ought to pass the winter in Gaul (thewinter-to-be passed (inf.) in Gaul to behoove, was evident). 10. Caesar demands (inf.) corn of the Haedui.

# FERÖ. EÖ. FĪÖ.

#### 211.

1. Equitātus, tripartītō dīvīsus, contrā hostem it. 2. Nostrī subsidiō sociīs iērunt. 3. Sēquanī hāc viā ¹ propter angustiās īre nōn possunt. 4. Caesar Britanniae quoque ² nātiōnēs ³ adīre volt. 5. Nostrī frūmentandī causā trāns Mosam ierant. 6. Hostēs nē ūnum quidem ⁴ nostrōrum impetum ferunt. 7. Factum est, ut hostēs nē ūnum ⁴ quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent. 8. Nōs propter ea, quae ferēbāmus, onera impediēbāmur. 9. Nōnnūllī ⁵ nē voltum quidem hostium atque aciem oculōrum ferre potuerant. 10. Helvetiī nōn facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre poterant. 11. Hīs rēbus fit, ut ⁶ Helvētiī minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possint. 12. Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut Haeduī sēsē ab Helvētiīs dēfendere nōn possent. 13. Id sī fīat, māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae sit, ut (prōvincia) hominēs bellicōsōs locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habeat.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: 1258, g. 2151, a. 3228, a; 237, d. 4151, e, second part. 5150 and a. 6332 and a, 2.

H.: 1420, 1, 3); Rule XXV. 2554, I. 4. 372. 4569, III. 2. 5553 and 1.

6 501, I. 1.

#### Ferō, I bear (I endure).

# ACTIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fe'rō Plur. 1. fe'ri mus 2. fers 2. fer'tis

3. fert 3. fe'runt

### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fe rē'bam Plur. 1. fe rē bā'mus
2. fe rē'bās 2. fe rē bā'tis

3. fe rē'bat 3. fe rē'bant

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. fe'ram Plur. 1. fe rē'mus
2. fe'rēs 2. fe rē'tis

3. fe'ret 3. fe'rent

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. tu'lī Plur. 1. tu'li mus
2. tu li'stī 2. tu li'stis

3. tu lē'runt (-re)

# PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. tu'le ram Plur. 1. tu le rā'mus

2. tu'le rās 2. tu le rā'tis

3. tu'le rat 3. tu'le rant

# FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. tu'lerō Plur. 1. tu le'ri mus
2. tu'leris 2. tu le'ri tis

3. tu'le rit 3. tu'le rint

# PASSIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

# PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fe'ror Plur. 1. fe'ri mur
2. fer'ris (-re) 2. fe ri'mi nī

3. fer'tur 3. fe run'tur

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fe rē 'bar Plur. 1. fe rē bā/mur
2. fe rē bā/mis (-re)
2. fe rē bā/mi nī
3. fe rē ba/tur
3. fe rē ba/tur

# FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. fe/rar Plur. 1. fe rē/mur
2. fe rē/ris (-re) 2. fe rē/mi nī
3. fe rē/tur 3. fe ren/tur

#### PERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. lā/tus sum
 Plur. 1. lā/tī su/mus

 2. lā/tus es
 2. lā/tī e'stis

 3. lā/tus est
 3. lā/tī sunt

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. lā/tus e/ram
 Plur. 1. lā/tī e rā/mus

 2. lā/tus e/rās
 2. lā/tī e rā/tis

 3. lā/tus e/rat
 3. lā/tī e/rant

# FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. lā'tus e'rō Plur. 1. lā'tī e'ri mus 2. lā'tus e'ris 2. lā'tī e'ritis 3. lā'tus e'rit 3. lā'tī e'runt

# ACTIVE VOICE, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

# PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fe'ram Plur. 1. fe rā'mus
2. fe'rās 2. fe rā'tis
3. fe'rat 3. fe'rant

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. fer'rem
 Plur. 1. fer rē'mus

 2. fer'rēs
 2. fer rē'tis

 3. fer'ret
 3. fer'rent

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. tu'le rim Plur. 1. tu le'ri mus

2. tu'le ris
2. tu'le rit
3. tu'le rit
4. tu'le rint
5. tu'le rint

3. tu'le rit 3. tu'le rint

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. tu lis'sem Plur. 1. tu lis sē'mus

2. tulis'sēs 2. tulis sē'tis 3. tulis'set 3. tulis'sent

# Passive Voice, Subjunctive Mood.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fe'rar Plur. 1. fe rā'mur 2. fe rā'mis (-re) 2. fe rā'mi nī

3. fe rā'tur 3. fe ran'tur

### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fer'rer Plur. 1. fer rē'mur

2. fer rē/ris (-re) 2. fer rē/mi nī 3. fer rē/tur 3. fer ren/tur

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. lā/tus sim Plur. 1. lā/tī sī/mus

2. lā'tus sīs 2. lā'tī sī'tis

3. lā'tus sit 3. lā'tī sint

# PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. lā'tus es'sem Plur. 1. lā'tī essē'mus

2. lā'tus es'sēs 2. lā'tī es sē'tis

3. lā'tus es'set 3. lā'tī es'sent

# IMPERATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE. Present Tense. PASSIVE VOICE.

Sing. 2. fer Sing. 2. fer'rī

Plur. 2. fer'te Plur. 2. fe ri'mi nī

#### Future Tense.

Sing. 2 and 3. fer'tō Plur. 2. fer tō'te

Plur. 3. fe run'tō

Sing. 2 and 3. fer'tor Plur. 2.

Plur. 3. fe run/tor

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Present Tense.

PASSIVE VOICE.

fer'rī

Perfect Tense.

tu lis'se

1

lā'tus es'se

Future Tense.

lā tū'rus es'se

lā'tum ī'rī lā'tus fo're

#### PARTICIPLES.

ACTIVE VOICE, Pres. fe'rēns, Fut. lā tū'rus.
PASSIVE VOICE, Perf. lā'tus, Fut. fe ren'dus (Gerundive).

# THE GERUND AND SUPINES.

N. Gen. fe ren'dī, Dat. fe ren'dō, Acc. fe ren'dum, Abl. fe ren'dō. Former Supine, lā'tum. Latter Supine, lā'tū.

Eō, I go.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. e'ō

2. īs

3. it

Plur. 1. ī'mus

2. **ī**'tis

3. e'unt

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. ī'bam
 Plur. 1. ī bā'mus

 2. ī'bās
 2. ī bā'tis

 3. ī'bat
 3. ī'bant

#### FUTURE TENSE:

 Sing. 1. ī'bō
 Plur. 1. ī'bi mus

 2. ī'bis
 2. ī'bi tis

 3. ī'bit
 3. ī'bunt

# PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. \(\bar{\psi}'\bar{\text{\vec{1}}}\) (i'\bar{\text{\vec{1}}}\), etc.) Plur. 1. \(\bar{\psi}'\bar{\text{\vec{1}}}\) mus
2. \(\bar{\text{\vec{1}}}\) vi'stis
3. \(\bar{\text{\vec{1}}}'\bar{\vec{1}}\) i' vi' (-re)

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. I've ram (i'e ram, etc.) Plur. 1. I ve rā'mus
2. I've rās
2. I ve rā'tis
3. I've rat
3. I've rant

# FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. \(\bar{1}'\text{ve r\vec{0}}\) (i'e r\vec{0}, etc.) Plur. 1. \(\bar{1}\text{ ive'ri mus}\)
2. \(\bar{1}'\text{ve ris}\)
3. \(\bar{1}'\text{ve rint}\)
3. \(\bar{1}'\text{ve rint}\)

# SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

# PRESENT TENSE.

 Sing. 1. e'am
 Plur. 1. e ā'mus

 2. e'ās
 2. e ā'tis

 3. e'at
 3. e'ant

# IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. ī'rem Plur. 1. ī rē'mus
2. ī'rēs 2. ī rē'tis
3. ī'ret 3. ī'rent

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. i've rim (i'e rim, etc.) Plur. 1. i ve'ri mus

2. **1**/veris 2. **1** ve/ri tis

3. **ī**'ve rit 3. **ī**'ve rint

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. īvis'sem (īs'sem, etc.) Plur. 1. īvis sē'mus

2. ī vis'sēs 2. ī vis sē'tis

3. ī vis/set 3. ī vis/sent

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Sing. 2. ī Plur. 2. ī'te

Fut. Sing. 2 and 3. ī'tō Plur. 2. ī tō'te; 3. e un'tō

#### Infinitives.

Pres. ī're Perf. ī vis'se (īs'se) Fut. i tū'rus es'se

#### PARTICIPLES.

Pres. i'ens (gen. e un'tis). Fut. i tū'rus

Gerund. Gen. e un'dī, Dat. e un'dō, Acc. e un'dum, Abl. e un'dō. Former Supine, i'tum. Latter Supine, i'tū.

#### FIo, I am made, I become.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fī'ō Plur. 1. fī'mus

2. fīs 2. fī/tis

3. fit 3. fī/unt

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fīē'bam Plur. 1. fīēbā'mus

2. fī ē/bās 2. fī ē bā/tis

3. fī ē'bat 3. fī ē'bant

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 1. fī'am Plur. 1. fī ē'mus 2. fī'ēs 2. fī ē'tis

3. fī'et 3. fī'ent

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing, 1. fac'tus sum Plur. 1. fac'tī su'mus
2. fac'tus es 2. fac'tī e'stis

3. fac'tus est 3. fac'tī sunt

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fac'tus e'ram Plur. 1. fac'tī erā'mus
2. fac'tus e'rās 2. fac'tī erā'tis

2. fac'tus e'rās 2. fac'tī e rā'tis 3. fac'tus e'rat 3. fac'tī e'rant

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fac'tus e'rō Plur. 1. fac'tī e'ri mus

2. fac'tus e'ris 2. fac'tī e'ri tis

3. fac'tus e'rit 3. fac'tī e'runt

# SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fī'am Plur. 1. fīā'mus

2. fī'ās 2. fīā'tis

3. fī'at 3. fī'ant

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fi'e rem Plur. 1. fi e rē'mus

2. fi'e rēs 2. fi e rē'tis

3. fi'e ret 3. fi'e rent

#### PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fac'tus sim Plur. 1. fac'tī sī'mus

2. fac'tus sīs 2. fac'tī sī'tis

3. fac'tus sit 3. fac'tī sint

#### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. 1. fac'tus es'sem Plur. 1. fac'tī es sē'mus

2. fac'tus es'sēs 2. fac'tī es sē'tis

3. fac'tus es'set 3. fac'tī es'sent

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Sing. 2. fī Plur. 2. fī'te

Fut. Sing. 2 and 3. fī'tō Plur. 3. fī tō'te; fī un'tō

#### INFINITIVES.

Pres. fi'e rī Perf. fac'tus es'se Fut. fac'tum ī'rī

# PARTICIPLES.

Perf. fac'tus Fut. fa ci en'dus (Gerundive)

# 212.

1. The infantry, separated into three divisions, attack (go against) the enemy. 2. We were going to reinforce the cavalry (for a reinforcement to the cavalry). 3. I could not have gone (was not able to have gone) by sea. 4. Why [do] you (sing.) wish to visit the nations of Britain? 5. I am going for the sake of waging war. 6. You (plur.) will not endure even one attack of the enemy. 7. It did not happen without reason that we did not endure even one attack of the enemy. 8. I am hindered by this load which I am carrying. 9. Some cannot (are not able to) endure the enemies' expression-of-countenance and the glare of their eyes. 10. We could have made (were able to have made) war upon the enemy. 11. From these circumstances it happens that we can easily make war upon our neighbors. 12. It happened all along (imperfect tense) that we could not defend ourselves from the enemy. 13. If this happens (shall happen), it will be with great danger to the province that it has warlike men as neighbors in an open and especially fertile country.

# QUESTIONS AND IMPERATIVE FORMS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. FUTURE PASSIVE INFINITIVES.

Suggestions.—1. Cum, 1 and 2, is to be translated since; cum, 3, although; fēcērunt ut profectio vidērētur, 2, they caused that the departure seemed, or concisely, the departure seemed.

2. The second sentences in 9 and 10 show two ways of expressing the future passive infinitive. The form in 10 is the common one. It is often used to express the future active infinitive with the verb of the ut-clause in the subjunctive active, and must be used when the verb has no future active participle. Since deponent verbs have the participles of both voices, the form given in 10, third sentence, may also be used with deponents.

#### 213.

1. Perfacile¹ est, cum² virtūte omnibus praestēmus, tōtīus Galliae imperio potiri. 2. Cum quisque domum<sup>3</sup> pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut 4 consimilis fugae profectio vidērētur. 3. Cum<sup>2</sup> ea ita sint, pācem Helvētiīs faciam. 4. Quid tibī vīs? Ariovistus rogāvit quid sibī vellet.6 5. Num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēponere possum? Hīs Caesar respondit num 8 recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēponere posse? 6 6. Sī 9 flūmen nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant. 7. Fīnem ōrandī fac. 10 Caesar dīcit, fīnem ōrandī faciat. 11 8. Vercingetorix proditionis accūsātus est, quod castra propius Romanos movisset, 12 quod sine imperio copias reliquisset, quod eius discessu Romani celeriter vēnissent. 9. Ea rēs longius 13 dūcētur. Lēgātus longius eam rem ductum īrī exīstimābat. 10. Sī opus erit, mīrābor. Caesar dīcit fore 14 (futūrum esse) ut 14 mīrētur, sī opus sit. Caesar dīcit sē mīrātūrum (esse), sī opus sit. 11. Sī opus esset, mīrārer. Caesar dīxit futūrum fuisse 15 ut 15 mīrārētur, sī opus esset.

Direction. — Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup>Rule 2. <sup>2</sup>326; Rule 79. <sup>8</sup>258, b. <sup>4</sup>332, e. <sup>5</sup>235 and Note; 236; Rule 29. <sup>6</sup>338. <sup>7</sup>210, 1, 2 and c. <sup>8</sup>210, 2 and f, Remark. <sup>9</sup>334 and f. <sup>10</sup>128, c. <sup>11</sup>339; Rule 82. <sup>12</sup>321; 341 and d; Rule 83. <sup>18</sup>93, a. <sup>14</sup>288, f. <sup>15</sup>337, b and 3.

Learn H.: <sup>1</sup>Rule XXXIV. <sup>2</sup>517; Rule XLVIII. <sup>3</sup>380, II. 2, 1); Rule X. <sup>4</sup>501, II. 1. <sup>5</sup>389. <sup>6</sup>523, II. 1, 2; Rule LIII. II. 1, 2. <sup>7</sup>351, 1, Note 3. <sup>8</sup>529, I., II. 1 and Note 3; Rule LV., I. <sup>9</sup>529, II. 1 and Note 1. <sup>10</sup>238. <sup>11</sup>523, III.; Rule LIII. III. <sup>12</sup>516, II.; Rule XLVII. II. <sup>13</sup>444 and 1. <sup>14</sup>537, 3 and Note 1. <sup>15</sup>527, III. and Note 1.

214.

1. It was very easy, since we excelled all in valor, to obtain control of the entire province. 2. Since we are all hastening to reach home, we make the departure seem (that the departure seems) very much like a flight. 3. Although these things were so, I made peace with them. 4. What do you want (for yourselves)? I asked what they wanted (for themselves). 5. Can we blot out the memory of our wrongs? The consuls asked whether they could blot out the memory of their wrongs. 6. We are waiting [to see] if you will cross the river. 7. Don't wait (make an end of waiting). Caesar asked [him] not to wait. 8. I am accused of treason because (as they say) I have moved camp nearer the enemy, and have left the forces without control. 9. Ariovistus will be condemned. They say that Ariovistus will be condemned. 10. If there should be need, I should wonder. The lieutenants said that if there should be need, they would wonder (express in two ways). 11. If there had been need, we should have wondered. The commanders said that if there had been need, they would have wondered.

# PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

Suggestions.—1. The inflections of the periphrastic conjugations are to be learned from A. & G. 129; H. 233, 234, and translated as suggested by the following illustrations: laudātūrus sum, I am (about) to praise, I intend (propose) to praise; laudandus sum, I am to be praised, I must (ought to, need to) be praised.

2. The subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation is used in Indirect Questions referring to future time. Learn A. & G. 333, 5, Note; 334 and a; H. 529, II. 4; e.g. Sciō quid factūrus sim, etc., I know what I shall do, etc. Scīvī quid factūrus essem, etc., I knew what I should do, etc. Scīvī quid factūrus fuerim, etc., I knew what I should have done, etc.

3. Such sentences as  $h\bar{v}c\ tib\bar{b}$  faciendum est, this is to be (must be) done by you, are best translated actively, you must do this.

# 215.

1. Repraesentābō quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuī. Caesar dīcit sē, quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuerit, repraesentātūrum¹ (esse). 2. Sciō quō itūrus sim.² Scīvī quō itūrus essem. Scīvī quō itūrus fuerim. 3. Caesarī³ omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant; mīlitēs cohortandī, vexillum prōpōnendum, sīgnum tubā dandum, aciēs īnstruenda. 4. Mīlitibus³ dē nāvibus erat dēsiliendum,⁴ in fluctibus cōnsistendum⁴ et cum hostibus pūgnandum.⁴ 5. Caesar cōncēdendum⁴ (esse) nōn putābat. 6. Caesar nōn expectandum⁴ (esse) sibī³ statuit. 7. Caesar partiendum (esse) sibī³ exercitum putāvit, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent.

Direction.— Learn A. & G.: <sup>1</sup>336, 2; Rule 80. <sup>2</sup>338; Rule 81. <sup>8</sup>232 and Note, first sentence; Rule 26. <sup>4</sup> Impersonal. H.: <sup>1</sup>523, I.; Rule LIII. I.; 524; Rule LIV. <sup>2</sup>523, II. 1.; Rule LIII.

II. 1. <sup>3</sup>388. <sup>4</sup> Impersonal.

# 216.

1. I am about-to-go. This you (sing.) were to-do-at-once. We have purposed-to-do this. They had intended-to-divide the army. 2. Caesar said that he would do-at-once what he had intended-topostpone to a more distant day. 3. We often wish to know what will happen (will be). We have often wished to know what would happen. We have often wished to know what would have happened. 4. I must-be-protected. We ought-to-have-been (perfect) selected. 5. We need to encourage the legions, hang out the flag, give the signal with a trumpet, and arrange the battle-line (the legions need-to-be-encouraged by us, etc.). 6. You (plur.) will need to jump down from the ships, take position in the waves, and fight with the enemy (it will need-to-bejumped-down by you, etc.). 7. Caesar [does] does not think that a concession ought to be made (it ought-to-be-conceded). 8. I think that I must divide the auxiliaries (that the auxiliaries ought-to-be-divided by me).

VOCABULARIES.

# ABBREVIATIONS.

a.,	active (transitive).	N.,	neuter gender.
abl.,	ablative.	n.,	neuter (intransitive).
acc.,	accusative.	num.,	numeral.
adj.,	adjective.	ord.,	ordinal.
adv.,	adverb.	p.,	passive.
aux.,	auxiliary.	p.p.,	perfect participle.
С.,	common gender.	part.,	particle.
card.,	cardinal.	pass.,	passive.
comp.,	comparative.	perf.,	perfect.
conj.,	conjunction.	pers.,	personal.
coör.,	coördinate.	pl.,	plural.
dat.,	dative.	pluperf.,	pluperfect.
dem.,	demonstrative.	poss.,	possessive.
dep.,	deponent.	prep.,	preposition.
dist.,	distributive.	pres.,	present.
F.,	feminine gender.	pres. p.,	present participle.
fut.,	future.	pron.,	pronoun.
gen.,	genitive.	reflex.,	reflexive.
imperf.,	imperfect.	rel.,	relative.
impers.,	impersonal.	semi-dep.,	semi-deponent.
ind.,	indicative.	sing.,	singular.
indecl.,	indeclinable.	sub.,	subordinate.
indef.,	indefinite.	subj.,	subjunctive.
interrog.,	interrogative.	sup.	superlative.
irr.,	irregular.	v.,	verb.
м.,	masculine gender.		

# LATIN-ENGLISH.

ab (ā, abs), prep., by, from. abdücuntur, 3. v. p., are led away. abest, irr. v. n., is away.

absum, -fui, -futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n., be absent.

absunt, irr. v. n., are away.

āc, conj., and.

acceptus, -a, -um, adj., acceptable. accidō, -cidī, —, -cidere, 3. v. n.,

happen. accipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, -cipere, 3. v.

a., receive, take. accipiunt, 3. v. a., take.

accommodo, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., put on.

accūsō, 1. v. a., accuse.

ācer, -cris, -cre, adj., active, violent. ācerrimē, adv., sup., most (very) violently.

ācerrimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., most (very) active, violent.

acies, -eī, F., (battle) line, glare.

ācrior, -us, adj., comp., more (rather) active, violent.

acriter, adv., violently, with spirit. ācrius, adv., comp., more violently. ad, prep., to, towards, near.

addūcō, -dūxī, -dūctum, -dūcere, 3. v. a., lead to.

adeō, -iī (-īvī), -itum, -īre, irr. v. a. and n., visit.

adfinitās, -tātis, F., relationship. aditus, -ūs, M., approach.

administro, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., execute.

adsum, -fuī, -futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n., be here.

adventus, -ūs, M., an arrival.

adversus, prep., against.

aedificium, -i, N., a building.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., fair.

aestās, -tātis, F., heat.

aetās, -tātis, F., age.

ager, agrī, M., a field.

agit, 3. v. a., treats.

agmen, -minis, N., an army (on the march), a column.

agō, ēgī, āctum, agere, 3. v. a., do, treat.

agricultūra, -ae, F., agriculture.

alacritas, -tatis, F., activity.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., unfavora-

aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod), pron., some, any.

aliquot, pron. indecl., several.

alius, -a, -ud, adj. pron., other, another.

alius . . . alius, one . . . another; aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others.

Allobroges, -um, M. pl., the Allobroges.

Alpēs, -ium, M. pl., the Alps.

alter, -era, -erum, the other. In pl., the other party. Alter . . . alter, the one ... the other; alteri ... alteri, one party ... the other.

altitūdō, -inis, F., height, depth.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, deep.

Ambarri, -orum, pl. of adj., the Ambarri.

amicior, -us, adj., comp., more (rather) friendly. amīcissimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., most (very) friendly. amicitia, -ae, F., friendship. amīcus, -ī, M., a friend. amīcus, -a, -um, adj., friendly. āmīttō, -mīsī, -mīssum, -mīttere, 3. v. a., lose. amor, -oris, M., love. amplius, adv., comp., more (with abl., more than). an, interrog. particle, or (used with second part of double question). angustiae, -ārum, F., narrowness of passage. animus, -ī, M., disposition, mind, feelings. annus, -ī, M., a year. annuus, -a, -um, adj., annual. ante, prep., before. antequam, adv., before. appellantur, 1. v. p., are called. appellat, 1. v. a., calls. appellatur, 1. v. p., is called. appello, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., call. Apr., see Aprīlis. Aprīlis, -e, adj., April. apud, prep., among. Arar, -aris, M., the Saône. arbor, -oris, F., a tree. arduus, -a, -um, adj., rugged. Ariovistus, -ī, M., Ariovistus. arma, -ōrum, N. pl., arms. armant, 1. v. a., arm. armantur, 1. v. p., are armed. armat, 1. v. a., arms. armātur, 1. v. p., is armed. armō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., arm, equip. Arverni, -orum, pl. of adj., the

Arverni.

ascendit, 3. v. a., ascends.

ascendō, -scendī, -scēnsum, -scen-

dere, 3. v. a. and n., ascends.

at, conj., but.
atque, conj., and.
auctor, -ōris, M., an adviser.
auctōritās, -tātis, F., authority, influence.
audācia, -ae, F., boldness.

audācior, -us, adj., comp., more (rather) daring.

audācissimē, adv., sup., most (very) boldly.

audācissimus, -a, -um, adj., sup.,
most (very) daring.
audācius, adv. comp. more (rather

audācius, adv., comp., more (rather, too) boldly.

audācter, adv., boldly. audāx, -ācis, adj., daring.

audeō, ausus, audēre, 2. v., semidep., dare.

audiō, -īvī, -ītum, -īre, 4. v. a., hear.

Aulus, -ī, M., Aulus.

auxilium, -ī, N., assistance; pl., auxiliary forces, auxiliaries. Avaricum, -ī, N., Avaricum.

#### B.

barbarī, -ōrum, noun from adj., M., barbarians.
Belgae, -ārum, M. pl., the Belgians. bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., warlike. bellō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n., make war.
Bellovacī, -ōrum, M., Bellovaci. bellum, -ī, N., war. bene, adv., well.
Boiī, -ōrum, M., Boii. bonus, -a, -um, adj., good.
Britannia, -ae, F., Britain.
Brūtus, -ī, M., Brutus.

#### C.

cadō, cecidī, cāsūrus, cadere, 3. v. n., fall. cadunt, 3. v. n., fall.

caedes, -is, F., slaughter. Caesar, -aris, M., Caesar. calamitas, -tatis, F., misfortune. cālō, -ōnis, M., a servant (of a soldier). capiō, cēpī, captum, capere, 3. v. a., take, capture, adopt. captīvus, -ī, M., noun from adj., a captive, prisoner. carrum, -i, N., cart, wagon. carrus, -i, M., cart, wagon. Cassianus, -a, -um, adj., of Cassius. castellum, -ī, N., fortress. Casticus, -ī, M., Casticus. castra, -ōrum, N. pl., a camp. catena, -ae, F., chain. causa, -ae, F., cause, sake. causa, for the sake of. cautus, -a, -um, adj., careful. celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, fleet. celerior, -us, adj., comp., swifter. celeriter, adv., swiftly, quickly. celerius, adv., comp., more (rather) swiftly. celerrimē, adv., sup., most (very) swiftly. celerrimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., swiftest. Celtae, -ārum, M., Celts. centurio, -onis, M., a centurion. certus, -a, -um, adj., definite. Cicero, -onis, M., Cicero. circiter, adv., about. circum, prep., around, about. circumvenio, -veni, -ventum, -venīre, 4. v. a., surround. citerior, -us, adj., comp., hither. citrā, prep., this side. cīvis, -is, c., a citizen. cīvitās, -tātis, F., the state. clārior, -us, adj., comp., more illustrious.

clārissimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., most

(very) illustrious. clārus, -a, -um, adj., illustrious.

clāssis, -is, F., a fleet. Claudius, -ī, M., Claudius. clēmentia, -ae, F., kindness. cohors, -ortis, F., a cohort. cohortor, -ātus, -āri, 1. v. dep., exhort, encourage. collis, -is, M., a hill. collocant (conlocant), 1. v. a., locate. collocantur (conlocantur), 1. v. p., are located. colloco (conloco), -avi, -atum, -are, 1. v. a., locate. colloquium, see conloquium. comes, -itis, c., a companion. commeātus, -ūs, M., supplies. committit, 3. v. a., joins. committo, -misi, -missum, -mittere, 3. v. a., join. commoveo, -movi, -motum, -movere, 2. v. a., influence. commūnis, -e, adj., common. complūrēs, -plūra (-plūria), adj., very many. comportō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., bring together. concēdō, -cēssi, -cēssum, -cēdere, 3. v. a. and n., concede, grant. concidit, 3. v. a., cuts to pieces. concido, -cidi, -cisum, -cidere, 3. v. a., cut to pieces. concilium, -ī, N., a council. conclāmō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n., shout together. condono, -avi, -atum, -are, 1. v. a., pardon. confero, -tuli, -latum, -ferre, irr. v. a., postpone. confirmant, 1. v. a., encourage. confirmantur, 1. v. p., are encouraged.

confirmat, 1. v. a., encourages.

encourage, strengthen.

confirmatur, 1. v. p., is encouraged. confirmo, -avi, -atum, -are, 1. v. a.,

conicio, -ieci, -iectum, -icere, 3. v. a., throw. coniūrātio, -onis, F., a conspiracy. conloco, etc., see colloco, etc. conloquium, -ī, N., a conference. conloquor, -locūtus, -loqui, 3. v. dep., confer. conor, -atus, -ari, 1. v. dep., endeavor. conscius, -a, -um, adj., conscious. conscribit, 3. v. a., enrolls. conscribo, -scripsi, -scriptum, -scribere, 3. v. a., enroll. consector, -atus, -ari, 1. v. dep., pursue, overtake. consensus, -ūs, M., consent. conservo, -avi, -atum, -are, 1. v. a., spare. Considius, -i, M., Considius. consido, -sedi, -sessurus, 3. v. n., settle. consilium, -i, N., a plan. consimilis, -e, adj., very much like. consisto, -stiti, -, -sistere, 3. v. n., take position. conspectus, -ūs, M., sight. conspiro, -avi, -atum, -are, 1. v. n., conspire. constituo, -stitui, -stitutum, -stituere, 3. v. a. and n., determine. consto, -stiti, -statūrus, -stare, 1. v. n., impers., is evident. consuetudo, -inis, F., custom. consul, -ulis, M., a consul. consulatus, -ūs, M., consulship. contemptio, -onis, F., contempt. contendit, 3. v. n., hastens. contendo, -tendo, -tentum, -tendere,

3. v. n., hasten, contend.

continenter, adv. continually.

with reflexive, keep within.

continet, 2. v. a., keeps.

contrā, prep., against.

contineo, -tinui, -tentum, -tinere,

continuus, -a, -um, adj., successive.

2. v. a., keep, restrain, hem in;

troops, forces. cornū, -ūs, (-ū), N., a wing (of an army). corpus, -oris, N., body. cotīdiē, adv., daily. Cotta, -ae, M., Cotta. creant, 1. v. a., elect. creantur, 1. v. p., are elected. creat, 1. v. a., elects. creatur, 1. v. p., is elected. cremō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., burn. creō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., elect. cultus, -ūs, M., civilization. cum, prep., (in company) with (abl. case). cum, conj., although, since, when. cupidē, adv., eagerly. cupidissimē, adv., sup., most (very) eagerly. cupiditās, -tātis, F., desire. cupidius, adv., comp., more (too, rather) eagerly. cupidus, -a, -um, adj., desirous of. cūr, adv., whycūra, -ae, F., care. currus, -ūs, M., chariot. custos, -odis, c., a guard. D. damnō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.,

contumēlia, -ae, F., insult.

call together, call.

convocō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.,

copia, -ae, F., plenty, supply; pl.,

dantur, 1. v. p., are given.
dat, 1. v. a., gives.
datur, 1. v. p., is given.
dē, prep., concerning, for, from.
decem, card. num. adj., indecl., ten.
decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.,
tenth.

condemn.

dant, 1. v. a., give.

dēcrētum, -ī, N., a decree. dēfendō, -fendī, -fēnsum, -fendere, 3. v. a., defend.

dēfendunt, 3. v. a., defend.

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., wearied.

dēlectant, 1. v. a., delight.

dēlectantur, 1. v. p., are delighted.

dēlectat, 1. v. a., delights.

dēlectātur, 1. v. p., is delighted.

dēlectō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., delight.

dēligit, 3. v. a., selects.

dēligitur, 3. v. p., is selected.

dēligō, -lēgī, -lēctum, -ligere, 3. v. a., select.

dēligunt, 3. v. a., select.

dēliguntur, 3. v. p., are selected.

dēmonstrant, 1. v. a., show.

dēmonstrantur, 1. v. p., are shown.

dēmonstrat, 1. v. a., shows.

dēmonstrātur, 1. v. p., is shown.

dēmonstro, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., show, point out.

dēpōnō, -posuī, -positum, -pōnere, 3. v. a., lay aside, blot out.

dēpopulor, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v. dep., devastate.

dēserō, -seruī, -sertum, -serere, 3. v. a., abandon.

dēsiliō, -siluī, -sultum, -silīre, 4. v. n., leap down.

dēsistō, -stitī, -stitūrus, -sistere, 3. v. n., stop.

dēsum, -fuī, -futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n., lack.

dēterreō, -terruī, -territum, -terrēre, 2. v. a., hinder.

dētineō, -tinuī, -tentum, -tinēre, 2. v. n., detain.

dēvastō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., devastate.

dexter, -era, -erum, and -tra, -trum, adj., right.

dīcō, dīxī, dictum, dīcere, 3. v. a. and n., say.

dīcor, dictus, dīcī, pass. of dīcō, 3. v. p. impers., it is said.

dies, -eī, m. (sometimes f.), a day.

difficilis, -e, adj., difficult.

difficultās, -tātis, F., a difficulty.

dignior, -us, adj., comp., more worthy.

dīgnissimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., most (very) worthy.

dīgnus, -a, -um, adj., worthy.

dīligēns, -entis, adj., diligent.

diligenter, adv., diligently.

diligentior, -us, adj., comp., more diligent, more careful.

dīligentissimē, adv., sup., most (very) diligently.

dīligentissimus, -a, -um, adj., most (very) diligent.

diligentius, adv., comp., more diligently.

dīmicō, -āvī, -ātūrus, -āre, 1. v. n., fight (to the end).

discēssus, -ūs, M., departure.

dispōnō, -posuī, -positum, -pōnere, 3. v. a., station.

distineō, -tinuī, -tentum, -tinēre, 2. v. a., keep apart.

diū, adv., a long time.

Divico, -onis, M., Divico.

dividit, 3. v. a., separates.

dīvidō, -vīsī, -vīsum, -videre, 3. v. a., separate.

dividunt, 3. v. a., separate.

dīvīsus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., divided, separated.

Divitiacus, -ī, M., Divitiacus.

dō, dedī, datum, dare, 1. v. a., give.

domicilium, -ī, N., an abode. dominus, -ī, M., a master, owner.

domus, -ī (-ūs), F., a house, home.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, F., doubt.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful.

ducit, 3. v. a., leads.

dücitur, 3. v. p., is led.

dūcō, dūxī, dūctum, dūcere, 3. v. a., lead, draw. dūcunt, 3. v. a., lead. dūcuntur, 3. v. p., are led. dum, conj., while, until. dummodō, conj., provided. Dumnorix. -igis, M., Dumnorix. duo, -ae, -o, card. num. adj., two. duodecim, card. num. adj., indecl., twelve. dux, ducis, C., a leader.

#### E.

ea, see is. ēdūcit, 3. v. a., leads out. ēdūcō, -dūxī, -dūctum, -dūcere, 3. v. a., lead out, lead away. effemino, -avi, -atum, -are, 1. v. a., enfeeble. egeō, eguī, —, egēre, 2. v. n., need. ēnuntio, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., reveal, disclose. eō, īvī (iī), itum, īre, irr. v. n., eques, -itis, M., a horseman; pl., cavalry. equitatus, -ūs, m., cavalry. equus, -ī, M., a horse. errō, -āvī, -ātūrus, -āre, 1. v. n., be mistaken, go wrong. ērumpō, -rūpī, -ruptum, -rumpere, 3. v. a. and n., break forth. es, see sum. est, (he, she, it, there) is. et, conj., and. et . . . et, both . . . and. etiam, conj., even. etsī, conj., even if. ex (ē), adv. and prep., from, on. exeo, -īvī (-iī), -itum, -īre, irr. v. n., go forth. exercitus, -ūs, M., an army (in training).

exeunt, irr. v. n., go forth.

exīstimō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., think, believe. exit, irr. v. n., goes forth. expellit, 3. v. a., drives out. expellitur, 3. v. p., is driven out. expello, -puli, -pulsum, -pellere, 3. v. a., drive out. expellunt, 3. v. a., drive out. expelluntur, 3. v. p., are driven out. experior, -pertus, -periri, 4. v. dep., try. explorator, -oris, M., a scout. expugnantur, 1. v. p., are captured. expūgnō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., capture. exspectō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. and n., wait. exsul, -ulis, c., an exile. F. faber, -brī, m., an engineer (in an army). Fabius, -ī, M., Fabius. facile, adv., easily. facilis, -e, adj., easy. facilius, adv., comp., more easily. facillime, adv., sup., most (very) easily. facinus, -oris, N., a crime. faciō, fēcī, factum, facere, irr. v. a. and n., make. facit, irr. v. a. and n., makes; iter facit, he makes a journey, marches. faciunt, irr. v. a. and n., make. factio, -onis, F., a faction. factum, -ī, N. of p.p., act; opus facto, need of action. facultās, -tātis, F., opportunity. fames, -is, F., starvation, famine, hunger. favent, 2. v. n., favor.

faveo, favi, fautūrus, favere, 2. v. n.,

favor (with dat.).

favet, 2. v. n., favors.

fēmina, -ae, F., a woman. ferō, tulī, lātum, ferre, irr. v. a. and n., bring.

ferrum, -ī, N., iron, sword. fert, irr. v. a. and n., brings.

ferunt, irr. v. a. and n., bring, bear, carry, endure.

fidelior, -us, adj., comp., more faith-

fidelis, -e, adj., faithful.

fidēlissimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., most (very) faithful.

fīlia, -ae, F., a daughter.

fīlius, -ī, M., a son.

finis, -is, M., sing., a boundary, limit; pl., territory.

finitimus, -a, -um, adj., adjacent. fīō, factus, fierī, pass. of faciō, happen.

fit, irr. v. p., is made, becomes.

fiunt, irr. v. p., are made, become. flagitant, 1. v. a., (earnestly) demand.

flagitat, 1. v. a., (earnestly) demands. flāgitō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., (earnestly) demand.

fluctus, -ūs, M., wave.

fluit, 3. v. n., flows.

flümen, -inis, N., a river.

fluō, flūxī, flūxum, fluere, 3. v. n., flow.

foedus, -eris., N., a treaty.

fortior, -us, adj., comp., more brave. fortis, -e, adj., brave.

fortissimē, adv., sup., most (very) bravely.

fortissimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., most (very) brave.

fortiter, adv., bravely.

fortitūdō, -inis, f., bravery.

fortius, adv., comp., more bravely. fortūna, -ae, F., fortune.

fossa, -ae, F., a trench, ditch.

frater, -tris, M., a brother.

frāternus, -a, -um, adj., fraternal.

frigus, -oris, N., cold; pl., cold weather, frosts.

frumentarius, -a, -um, adj., fertile.

frümentor, -tātus, -tārī, 1. v. dep., gather grain.

frumentum, -ī, N., grain, rations.

fuga, -ae, F., flight.

fugiō, fūgī, fugitūrus, fugere, 3. v. a. and n., fly.

fui, see sum.

furor, -oris, M., frenzy.

### G.

G., see  $G\bar{a}ius$ . Gāius, -ī, M., Gaius. Galba, -ae, M., Galba. galea, -ae, F., a helmet. Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul. Galli, -orum, M. pl., Gauls. Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., Gallic. gaudeō, gāvīsus, gaudēre, 2. v. n., rejoice.

Genāva, -ae, F., Geneva.

genus, generis, N., a class.

Germāni, -orum, adj. as noun, the Germans.

Germānia, -ae, F., Germany.

gerō, gessī, gestum, gerere, 3. v. a., carry on.

gerunt, 3. v. a., carry on.

gloria, -ae, F., glory, fame.

grātia, -ae, F., popularity, favor.

grātum, -ī, N. of adj., favor.

gravior, -us, adj., 3., comp. of gravis; greater, more advanced.

graviter, adv., severely.

# H.

habent, 2. v. a. and n., have, treat, regard.

habentur, 2. v. p., are treated (as), are regarded (as).

habeo, habuī, habitum, habēre, 2. v. a. and n., have, treat, regard.

habet, 2. v. a. and n., has, treats, regards.

habētur, 2. v. p., is treated (as), is regarded (as).

Haedui, -ōrum, M., noun from adj., the Haedui.

Haeduus, -a, -um, adj., of the Haedui.

Helvētii, -ōrum, M., noun from adj., the Helvetii.

hibernus, -a, -um, adj., N. pl. as noun, winter quarters.

hīc, haec, hōc, dem. pron., this, he, she, it.

hiemō, -āvī, -ātūrus, -āre, 1. v. n., pass the winter.

homō, -inis, m., a man.

honor (-os), -oris, M., honor.

horreō, horruī, —, horrēre, 2. v. n. and a., shudder at.

hospes, -itis, M., a guest. hostis, -is, C., an enemy.

iam, adv., already.

ī, see is.

I.

ibi, adv., there.
Id., see Idūs.
īdem, eadem, idem, dem. pron., the same.
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., suitable.
Idūs, Iduum, F. pl., Ides.
īgnis, -is, M., fire.
īgnōtus, -a, -um, adj., unknown.
ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., that, he, she, it.
impedīmentum, -ī, N., baggage.
impedīo, -īvī, -ītum, -īre, 4. v. a., obstruct, hinder.
imperātor, -ōris, M., commander (in chief).

imperium, -ī, N., (military) power, control, order.

imperō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. and n.. command, order.

imperor, -ātus, -ārī, pass. of imperō, 1. v. p., impers., it is commanded.

impetus, -ūs, m., an attack. importō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.,

import.

improbus, -a, -um, adj., wicked. imus, see *īnfimus*.

in, prep., in, into, upon, towards. incendō, -cendī, -cēnsum, -cendere, 3. v. a., burn, set on fire.

incolō, -coluī, —, -colere, 3. v. a. and n., inhabit.

incolunt, 3. v. a. and n., *inhabit*. incommodum, -ī, N., noun from adi., *disaster*.

incrēdibilis, -e, adj., extraordinary. incūsō, -āvī, ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., upbraid.

indignus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy. inferior, adj., comp., inferior. inferō, intulī, illātum, inferre, irr.

v. a., bring upon.

Infert, irr. v. a., brings upon. Infertur, irr. v. p., is brought upon. Inferunt, irr. v. a., bring upon.

inferuntur, irr. v. p., are brought upon.

infimus (imus), adj., sup., lowest part of, foot of.

īnfluō, -flūxī, -flūxum, -fluere, 3. v. n., flow into.

ingens, -entis, adj., enormous.

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj., unfriendly;
 M. as noun, an enemy (personal),
 rival.

iniūria, -ae, F., injury, violence; pl., wrongs.

iunāscor, -nātus, -nāscī, 3. v. dep., spring up.

inopia, -ae, F., scarcity.

însidiae, -ārum, F. pl., treachery.

īnsīgnis, -e, adj., N. as noun, decorations.

īnstruō, -ūxī, -ūctum, -uere, 3. v. a., arrange.

insuētus, -a, -um, adj., *unaccustomed*. inter, prep., *between*, *among*.

interclūdō, -clūsi, -clūsum, -clūdere, 3. v. a., cut off.

interest, irr. v. n., intervenes.

interficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, -ficere, 3. v. a., slay, put to death.

interim, adv., meanwhile.

intersum, -fuī, -futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n., intervene; also impers., it concerns.

intrā, prep., within.

inūtilis, -e, adj., unserviceable.

invītissimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., most (very) unwilling.

invītus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling.

ipse, -a, -um, dem. pron., himself, herself, itself.

is, ea, id, dem. pron., this, that, he, she, it.

iste, ista, istud, dem. pron., this, that. ita, adv., so.

Ītalia, -ae, F., Italy.

iter, itineris, N., journey, road, way, march; pl., routes, roads, marches.

iterum, adv., again.

iugum, -ī, N., ridge.

iūnior, -us, adj., comp., younger.

iūre, adv., ablative of iūs, rightly. iūs, iūris, N., right.

iūstus, -a, -um, adj., just.

invant, 1. v. a., assist, aid.

iuvantur, 1. v. p., are assisted, are aided.

iuvat, 1. v. a., assists, aids.

iuvātur, 1. v. p., is assisted, is aided. iuvenis, -is, M., noun from adj., a young man, youth.

iuvenis, -e, adj., young.

iuvō, iūvī, iūtum, iuvāre, 1. v. a., assist, aid.

L.

labor, -ōris, M., labor, task.

laboro, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n., struggle.

lacus, -ūs, M., a lake.

laetior, -us, adj., comp., more glad.

laetissimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., most (very) glad.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., glad.

latrō, -ōnis, m., a robber.

laudant, 1. v. a., praise.

laudantur, 1. v. p., are praised.

laudat, 1. v. a., praises.

laudātur, 1. v. p., is praised.

laudō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., praise.

laus, laudis, F., praise.

lēgātiō, -onis, f., an embassy.

lēgātus, -ī, M., a lieutenant, an ambassador.

legiō, -ōnis, F., a legion.

Lemannus, -ī, M., Lemannus.

lēnitās, -tātis, f., gentleness.

lēx, lēgis, F., a law.

līberī, -ōrum, M. pl., children.

līberō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., set free.

lībertās, -tātis, f., liberty.

licet, licuit (licitum est), licēre, 2. v. impers., is permitted.

Liger, -eris, M., the Loire.

lingua, -ae, F., language.

Liscus, -ī, M., Liscus.

littera (lītera), -ae, F., letter (of the alphabet); pl., letter, epistle.

lītus, -oris, N., a shore.

locus, -ī, M. (pl. locī and neut. loca), N. pl., places, country.

longē, adv., far.

longissimē, adv., sup., farthest, very far.

longius, adv., comp., farther. longus, -a, -um, adj., distant.

Lucius, -ī, M., Lucius. lūx, lūcis, F., light.

#### M.

M., see Mārcus. magis, adv., more. magistrātus, -ūs, M., a magistracy, a magistrate. māgnitūdo, -inis, F., magnitude. māgnopere (māgnō opere), adv., greatly, very much. māgnus, -a, -um, adj., great, large. māiestās, -tātis, F., majesty. māior, -us, adj., comp., greater. mālō, māluī, —, mālle, irr. v. a. and n., prefer. malus, -a, -um, adj., bad. maneo, mansi, mansum, manere, 2. v. n., remain. manus, -ūs, F., a hand, a band. Mārcus, -ī, M., Marcus. mare, -is, N., the sea. mater, -tris, F., mother. mātrimonium, -ī, N., marriage. mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe. māximē, adv., sup., very, in the highest degree, especially. māximus, -a, -um, adj., sup., greatest. melior, -us, adj., comp., better. melius, adv., comp., better. memoria, -ae, F., memory. merces, -edis, F., a reward. meritum, -ī, N., desert. Messāla, -ae, M., Messala. mētior, mēnsus, mētīrī, 4. v. dep., distribute, measure. metus, -ūs, M., fear. meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron., my, mine. mīles, -itis, m., a soldier. mīlia (millia), -ium, N., thousand. mīlitāris, -e, adj., military. mille, card. adj. indecl.; and neut. noun, indecl. in sing., a thousand.

Minerva, -ae, F., Minerva. minimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., least. minor, -us, adj., comp., less; N. as noun. minus, adv., less. mīror, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v. dep., a. and n., wonder (at). miser, -era, -erum, adj., unfortunate. mīttit, 3. v. a., sends. mittitur, 3. v. p., is sent. mīttō, mīsī, mīssum, mīttere, 3. v. a., send. mittunt, 3. v. a., send. mittuntur, 3. v. p., are sent. monent, 2. v. a., warn. monentur, 2. v. p., are warned. moneō, -uī, -itum, -ēre, 2. v. a., warn. monet, 2. v. a., warns, admonishes. monētur, 2. v. p., is warned. mons, montis, M., a mountain. moror, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v. dep., delay. mors, mortis, F., death. mos, moris, M., a custom. Mosa, -ae, M., Meuse. moveo, movi, motum, movere, 2. v. a., disturb, move. multitūdō, -inis, F., a multitude. multus, -a, -um, adj., much, many. mūniō, -īvī (-iī), -ītum, -īre, 4. v. a. and n., fortify. mūnītiō, -ōnis, F., a fortification, fortifying. mūrus, -ī, M., a wall. N.

Nantuātēs, -um, M. pl., Nantuates. nātiō, -ōnis, F., a nation. nātūra, -ae, F., nature. nauta, -ae, M., a sailor. nāvigō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n., navigate. nāvis, -is, F., a ship. nē, conj., lest, that . . . not, not.

-ne . . . an . . . an, or . . . or. -ne, enclitic, asks a question, did, etc., do, etc. nē . . . quidem, adv., not . . . even.

nefās, indecl., N., crime.

neias, indeci., N., crime.

neglegō, -lēxī, -lēctum, -legere, 3. v. a., neglect.

negō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. and n., say . . . not.

nēmō, nēminis, c., no one.

neque, adv., neither.

neque... neque, adv., neither...

nex, necis, F., death.

nihil, indecl., N., as adv., not at all. nisi, conj., unless.

nix, nivis, F., snow.

nōbilis, -e, adj., 3. pl. as M., noun, nobles.

nobilitas, -tatis, F., the nobility.

nōlō, nōluī, —, nōlle, irr. v. a. and n., be unwilling.

nomen, -minis, N., a name.

non, adv., not.

non . . . modo, adv., not only.

non modo...sed etiam, not only ... but also.

non ... solum, sed ... etiam, adv., not only ... but also.

nonne, interrog. part., asks a question, did not, etc., do not, etc.

nonnullus (non nullus), -a, -um, adj., some.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pron., our.

nōtus, -a, -um, adj., well-known.

novem, card. num. adj. indecl., nine. novissimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., newest, rear.

novus, -a, -um, adj., new.

nūllus, -a, -um, gen. nūllīus, dat. nūllī, adj. as m. noun, no one.

num, interrog. part., does? is? it is not, is it?

numerus, -ī, M., a number.

numquam (nunquam), adv., never. nunc, adv., now. nuntius, -ī, M., a messenger.

#### 0.

Ō, exclamation, o.
ob, prep., on account of.
oblītus, -a, -um, adj., forgetful.
oblīviscor, -lītus, -līviscī, 3. v. dep., forget.

obses, -idis, c., a hostage.

obtineō, -tinuī, -tentum, -tinēre, 2. v. a., obtain, hold, possess.

occupō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., occupy, take possession of, seize. octō, card. num. adj. indecl., eight.

oculus, -ī, M., eye.

offendō, -fendī, -fēnsum, -fendere, 3. v. a. and n., hurt.

officium, -ī, N., duty.

omnis, -e, adj., all, every.

onus, -eris, N., load.

opera, -ae, F., care.

oportet, -uit, —, -ēre, 2. v. impers., it behooves, is fitting.

oppidum, -ī, N., town (walled), stronghold.

oppūgnat, 1. v. a., storms.

oppūgnō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., storm.

optimē, adv., sup., best.

optimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., best.

opus, operis, N., need.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F., oration.

ōrātor, -ōris, M., an orator.

orbis, -is, M., a circle.

ordō, -inis, M., a rank, company. Orgetorix, -igis, M., Orgetorix.

ornāmentum, -ī, N., an adornment.

ōrō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. and n., entreat.

#### P.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, f., a foraging. pābulum, -ī, N., fodder.

pācō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., subdue. paene, adv., almost. parant, 1. v. a., prepare. parantur, 1. v. p., are prepared. parat, 1. v. a., prepares. paratior, -us, adj., comp., better prepared. parātur, 1. v. p., is prepared. parātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., prepared, ready. pāreō, pāruī, pāritūrus, pārēre, 2. v. n., obey. parō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., prepars, partis, F., a part, some. partior, -ītus, -īrī, 4. v. dep., divide. parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, little. passus, -ūs, M., a pace. patēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., pater, -tris, M., father; pl., ancestors. patrius, -a, -um, adj., ancestral. paucus, -a, -um, adj., few. pāx, pācis, F., peace. pecūnia, -ae, F., money. pedes, -itis, M., foot-soldier; pl., inpēior, -us, adj., comp., worse. per, prep., through. perducit, 3. v. a., constructs. perdūco, -dūxī, -dūctum, -dūcere, 3. v. a., construct. pereo, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, -īre, irr. v. n., perish. pereunt, irr. v. n., perish. perfacilis, -e, adj., very easy. perfidia, -ae, F., treachery. perfuga, -ae, M., a deserter. periculum, -ī, N., danger, peril. perit, irr. v. n., perishes. perītissimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., very skilful.

peritus, -a, -um, adj., skilful.

perpaucus, -a, -um, adj., pl., very few. persuadent, 2. v. a. and n., persuade. persuādeō, -suāsī, -suāsum, -suādēre, 2. v. a. and n., persuade. persuadet, 2. v. a. and n., persuades. pertineo, -tinui, —, -tinere, 2. v. n., pervenio, -veni, -ventum, -venire, 4. v. n., reach, arrive. perveniunt, 4. v. n., arrive, reach. pēs, pedis, M., a foot. pessimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., worst. petō, petīvī, petītum, petere, 3. v. a. and n., request, seek. phalanx, -angis, F., a phalanx. Pīsō, -ōnis, M., Piso. plebs, -is, F., the populace. plēnus, -a, -um, adj., full. plerumque, adv., generally. plūrimum, adv., sup., the most. plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., most. plūs, plūris, adj., comp., more. poena, -ae, F., punishment. ponit, 3. v. a., places, pitches, lays pono, posui, positum, ponere, 3. v. a., place, pitch, lay down. pons, pontis, M., a bridge. populor, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v. dep., devastate. populus, -ī, M., a people. porta, -ae, F., gate. possessio, -onis, F., possession. possum, potuī, posse, irr. v. n., be able, can. post, prep., after. posterus, -a, -um, adj., the next. postride, adv., the next day. postulant, 1. v. a., demand. postulat, 1. v. a., demands. postulō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., potens, -entis, adj., powerful, influential.

potentātus, -ūs, M., chief command. potentior, -us, adj., comp., more powerful.

potentissimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., most (very) powerful.

potestās, -tātis, F., civil power.

potior, potītus, potīrī, 4. v. dep., obtain control of, become master of. praecō, -ōnis, M., a herald.

praedor, -ātus, -āri, 1. v. dep.,

plunder.

praeest, irr. v. n., in charge of. praefectus, -ī, M., a commander. praeficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, -ficere, 3. v. a., put (place) in charge of.

praeficit, 3. v. a., puts (places) in

charge of.

praemīttit, 3. v. a., sends forward. praesēns, entis, adj., present. praesidum, -ī, N., a garrison.

praestō, -stitī, -stātum, -stāre, 1. v.
a. and n., excel; impers., is better.
praesum, -fuī, -esse, irr. v. n., be in

charge of.

praeter, prep., beyond.

praeterita, -ōrum, adj., N. pl. as noun, the past.

prīma lūx, daybreak.

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., sup., first, front.

prīnceps, -cipis, M. adj. as noun, leading man, chief.

prīncipātus, -ūs, M., leadership. prior, -us, adj., comp., the former. priusquam, adv., before. prīvātus, -a, -um, adj., private. prō, prep., in place of, as.

probō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.,

approve. prōcōnsul, -ulis, m., a proconsul. prōditiō, -ōnis, F., treason.

proelium, -ī, N., a battle.

profectio, -onis, f., departure. prohibent, 2. v. a., keep from.

prohibentur, 2. v. p., are kept from.

prohibeō, -hibuī, -hibītum, -hibēre, 2. v. a., keep from.

prohibet, 2. v. a., keeps from. prope, adv. and prep., near.

properō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. and n., hasten.

propinquitās, -tātis, F., vicinity.

propior, -us, adj., comp., nearer. propono, -posui, -positum, -ponere,

3. v. a., represent. propter, prep., on account of. provincia, -ae, F., the province.

provincia, -ae, F., the province. proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup., nearest, (very) near.

publicus, -a, -um, adj., public.

puer, -ī, M., a boy.

pūgna, -ae, F., a fight.

pūgnō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n., fight.

pūgnor, -ātus, -ārī, pass. of pūgnō, 1. v. p. impers., it is fought.

putō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., think.

#### Q.

quam, adv. and conj., than, as much as possible, how.

quāre, conj., why.

quartus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., fourth.

quattuor, card. num. adj. indecl., four.

-que, conj., enclitic, and.

quī, quae, quod, cūius, etc., rel. pron., who, which, that.

quibuscum, prep. phrase, with whom. quin, conj., but that.

quindecim, card. num. adj. indecl., fifteen.

quingenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., five hundred.

quīnī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., five (at a time).

quinque, card. num. adj. indecl., five.

quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), cūius, etc., interrog. pron., who, which, what.

quis (quī), quae, quod (quid), cūius, etc., indef. pron., anyone. quisquam, quae-, quid-, cūius-, etc.,

indef. pron., anyone, anything. quisque, quae-, quid- (quod-), indef. pron., each one.

quō, rel. adv., whither; conj., that, in order that.

quod, conj., because.

quōminus, conj., (the less by which), from (with subj.).

quoque, conj., also.

#### R.

recens, -entis, adj., recent.

recipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, -cipere, 3. v. a., with reflexive, betake himself (themselves), recover, retreat.

recipiunt, 3. v. a., sē recipiunt, betake themselves, retreat.

regiō, -ōnis, F., a region.

rēgnum, -ī, N., the throne.

regō, rēxī, rēctum, regere, 3. v. a., rule.

relinquō, -līquī, -lictum, -linquere, 3. v. a., leave.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remaining. remaneō, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, -manēre, 2. v. n., remain.

Rēmī, -ōrum, M. pl., Remi.

removeō, -mōvī, -mōtum, -movēre, 2. v. a., remove.

renovō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., renew.

repraesentō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., do at once.

rēs, reī, f., thing, affair, circumstance, undertaking, property.

rescindit, 3. v. a., destroys.

respondeō, -spondī, -spōnsum, -spondēre, 2. v. n., to respond, reply.

respondet, 2. v. n., responds, replies. respublica, respublica, respublica, renormanwealth, republic.

revertō, -vertī, -versum, -vertere, 3. v. n., return.

revocō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., call away.

rēx, rēgis, M., a king.

Rhēnus, -ī, M., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, -ī, M., the Rhone.

rogō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., ask.

Rōma, -ae, F., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman.

rūmor, -ōris, M., a rumor.

#### S.

saepe, adv., often.

saepissimē, adv., sup., most often. saepius, adv., comp., more (rather)

often.

salūs, -ūtis, F., safety.

Santones, -ūm (-ī, -ōrum), M. pl., Santones.

satis, adv., sufficiently; with gen., sufficient.

satisfaciō, -fēcī, -factūrus, -facere, irr. v. n., satisfy, make amends.

satisfactio, -onis, f., amends.

saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded.

scapha, -ae, F., a boat.

sciō, scīvī, scītum, scīre, 4. v. a., know.

sē (sēsē), see suī.

sēcum, prep. phrase, with him, etc.

sed, conj., but.

sēdecim, card. num. adj. indecl., sixteen.

sēdēs, -is, F., a dwelling-place.

sēmentis, -is, f., a sowing; sēmentīs facere, sow grain.

semper, adv., always.

senātor, -ōris, M., a senator.

senātus, -ūs, M., the senate.

senex, senis, M. adj. as noun, an old man.

sēnī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj., six each.

senior, -us, adj., older.

septem, card. num. indecl., seven.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, M. pl. from adj., the Sequani.

sequor, secūtus, sequī, 3. v. dep., follow, be inflicted upon.

sermō, -ōnis, M., conversation.

servant, 1. v. a., protect.

servantur, 1. v. p., are protected.

servat, 1. v. a., protects.

servātur, 1. v. p., is protected.

serviō, -iī (-īvī), -ītūrus, -īre, 4. v. n., to be a slave.

servitūs, -ūtis, f., servitude.

servō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., protect.

servus, -ī, M., a slave.

sevēritās, -tātis, F., strictness.

sex, card. num. adj. indecl., six.

sexcentī, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., six hundred.

sī, conj., if.

sīc, adv., so.

signum, -ī, N., signal.

silentium, -ī, N., silence.

silva, -ae, F., a forest.

similior, -us, adj., comp., more like. similis, -e, adj., like.

simillimus, -a, -um, adj., sup., most like.

sine, prep., without.

singulī, -ae, -a, dist. num. adj. pl., single, one by one.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left.

socius, -ī, M., an ally.

sõlus, -a, -um, adj., alone.

soror, -ōris, F., a sister.

spatium, -î, N., space.

spērō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. and n., hope, expect.

spēs, -eī, F., hope.

statuō, -uī, -ūtum, -uere, 3. v. a., decide.

student, 2. v. n., desire.

studeō, studuī, —, studēre, 2. v. n., desire.

studet, 2. v. n., desires.

studium, -ī, N., zeal.

sub, prep. with acc. and abl., under, at the foot of.

subitō, adv., suddenly.

subsidium, -ī, N., re-enforcement.

Suessiones, -um, M. pl., Suessiones. suī, sibī, sē, reflex. pron., himself, herself, itself, etc.

Sulla, -ae, M., Sulla.

sum, fuī, futūrus, esse, irr. v. n., be.

sunt, are.

superior, -us, adj., comp., higher, superior.

superō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. and n., conquer, overcome, overpower.

supersum, -fuī, -futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n., survive, remain.

supplex, -icis, c., a suppliant.

suprēmus, -a, -um, adj., sup., highest, supreme.

suspīciō, -ōnis, F., suspicion.

sustineō, -tinuī, -tentum, -tinēre, 1. v. a. and n., sustain.

suus, -a, -um, reflex. adj. pron., his, hers, its, their; his own, etc.

#### T.

taceō, tacuī, tacitum, tacēre, 2. v. a. and n., be silent.

tam, adv., so.

tamen, adv., still, yet.

tametsī, adv., although. tandem, adv., at length.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great.

tēcum, prep. phrase, with you.

tegō, tēxī, tēctum, tegere, 3. v. a., cover, conceal.

temperō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., refrain.

tempestās, -ātis, F., storm.

temptant, 1. v. a., attempt, try.

temptō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., attempt, try.

tempus, -oris, N., time.

teneō, tenuī, tentum, tenēre, 2. v, a., hold, keep, bind.

tergum, -ī, N., back.

terra, -ae, F., land.

terreō, terruī, territum, terrēre, 2. v. a., terrify.

territō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., frighten.

tertius, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., third. testis, -is, c., a witness.

timeō, -uī, —, -ēre, 2. v. a. and n., be afraid (of).

timidus, -a, -um, adj., cowardly.

timor, -ōris, M., fear. tōtus, -a, -um, adj., the whole (of),

totus, -a, -um, adj., the whole (of) entire.

trāns, prep., beyond, across. trānsdūcitur, 3. v. p., is led over. trānsdūcō (trādūcō), -dūxī, -dūctum,

-dūcere, 3. v. a., lead over. trānsdūcunt, 3. v. a., lead over. trānsdūcuntur, 3. v. p., are led over. trānseō, -iī, -itum, -īre, irr. v. a. and

n., cross. trānseunt, irr. v. a. and n., cross. trānsit, irr. v. a. and n., crosses.

trānsitur, irr. v. p., is crossed. trānsportō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.,

transport.
Trebonius, -ī, M., Trebonius.

trēs, tria, gen. trium, card. num.

trēs, tria, gen. trium, card. num. adj., three.

Trēverī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Treveri. tribūnus, -ī, M., a tribune.

trīduum, -ī, N., space of three days. tripartītō, abl. as adv., in three divisions.

tuba, -ae, F., trumpet.

tum, adv., then.

turris, -is, F., a tower.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., safe.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron., your, yours.

#### U.

ubī, adv., when, where.

Ubii, -ōrum, M., the Ubii.

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. ūllīus, dat. ūllī, adj., any; as noun, anybody, anyone.

undique, adv., from every side.

ūnus, -a, -um, card. num. adj., one, alone, only.

urbs, urbis, F., a city.

ūsus, -ūs, m., use.

ut (utī), conj. (with subj.), that, in order that, so as to; (with ind.) as.

ut . . . ita, as . . . so.

ūtilior, -us, adj., comp., more useful. ūtilis, -e, adj., useful.

ūtilissimus, -a, -um, adj.,

most (very) useful. ūtor, ūsus, ūtī, 3. v. dep., employ,

exercise, use. uxor, -ōris, F., a wife.

#### V.

vadum, -ī, N., a ford.

vallum, -ī, N., a rampart, palisade.

vastant, 1. v. a., lay waste.

vastantur, 1. v. p., are laid waste.

vastat, 1. v. a., lays waste.

vastātur, 1. v. p., is laid waste.

vastō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., lay waste.

vectīgal, -ālis, N., tribute; pl., revenues.

vehementer, adv., severely. velutsī, adv., (just) as if.

veniō, vēnī, ventūrus, venīre, 4. v.

n., come.

venit, 4. v. n., comes. veniunt, 4. v. n., come. vereor, -itus, -ērī, 2. v. dep., fear. Vergobretus, -ī, M., Vergobretus. versō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., turn (this way and that). vertō, vertī, versum, vertere, 3. v. a., turn; terga vertere, turn and flee. Vesontio, -onis, F., Vesontio. vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pron., your, yours. veterānus, -a, -um, adj., veteran. vetus, -eris, adj., former. vexant, 1. v. a., harass. vexillum, -ī, N., flaq. vexō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., harass. via, -ae, F., way. victor, -ōris, M., a victor. victoria, -ae, F., victory. vīcus, -ī, M., village.

videō, vīdī, vīsum, vidēre, 2. v. a., see; pass., videor, seem.

vincō, vicī, victum, vincere, 3. v. a. and n., conquer. vir, virī, M., a man. virtūs, -ūtis, F., valor; pl., virtues. vīs, vīs, F., force. vita, -ae, F., life. vītō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., avoid. vīvō, vīxī, vīctum, vīvere, 3. v. n., live. vix, adv., with difficulty. vocant, 1. v. a., summon.

vocantur, 1. v. p., are summoned.
vocat, 1. v. a., summons.
vocātur, 1. v. p., is summoned.
vocō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a., summon.
volnus (vulnus), -eris, N., wound.
volō, voluī, —, velle, irr. v. a. and n., be willing, wish, want.

vox, vocis, f., a voice. vulgus, -i, N., common people. vultus, -ūs, M., expression of countenance.

## ENGLISH-LATIN.

A.

A., see Aulus. a, untranslated. abandon, dēsero, -serui, -sertum, -serere, 3. v. a. able, possum, potuī, posse, irr. v. n. abode, domicilium, -ī, 2. N. about, circiter, adv. about, circum, prep. with acc. absent, absum, -fuī, -futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n. acceptable, acceptus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adi. accomplish, faciō, fēcī, factum, facere, 3. v. a. accordance (in . . . with), abl. case. account (on . . . of), ob, prep. account (on . . . of), causā with accuse, accūso, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. across, trāns, prep. with acc. act, factum, -ī, 2. N.

action, see act.
active, ācer, ācris, ācre, 3. adj.
actively, ācriter, adv.
activity, alacritās, -tātis, 3. F.
adjacent, fīnitimus, -a, -um, 1. and 2.
adj.
admiral, praefectus clāssis.
adopt, capiō, cēpī, captum, capere,
3. v. a.
adornment, ornāmentum, -ī, 2. N.
advanced, gravis, -e, 3. adj.
affair, see thing.

a. and n. again, iterum, adv. against, contra, adversus, with acc. against . . . will, see unwillingly. age, aetās, -tātis, 3. F. agriculture, agricultūra, -ae, 1. F. aid, see assist. aid, praesidium, -ī, 2. N. alarmed, commōtus, -a, -um, p.p. 1. and 2. as adj. all, omnis, -e, 3. adj. all along, imperfect tense. Allobroges, Allobroges, -um, pl., 3. M. ally, socius, -ī, 2. m. almost, paene, adv. alone, see one. alone,  $s\bar{o}lus$ , -a, -um, 1. and 2. adi. Alps, Alpēs, -ium, pl., 3. F. already, iam, adv. also, quoque, adv. although, cum, etsī, tametsī, conjs. always, semper, adv. am, sum, fuī, futūrus, esse, irr. Ambarri, Ambarri, -ōrum, pl., 2. M. ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, 2. m. amends, satisfactio, -onis, 3. F. among, in, prep. with abl. among, apud, prep. with acc. among themselves, inter sē. ancestors, patrēs, -trum, pl., 3. M.,

see father.

afraid of, timeo, -ui, -, -ēre, 2. v.

ancestral, patrius, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

and, et, -que, atque, āc, coör. conj. and (both . . . and), et . . . et, -que . . . -que.

announce, see reveal.

annually, annuus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

another, alius, alia, aliud, adj. pron. another (one . . . another), see one. any, aliquis, -qua, -quid, adj. pron. any, ūllus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

anybody, see anyone (ūllus).

anyone (indefinite), quisquam, quaequam, quidquam, pron.

anyone (very indefinite), quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), pron.

anyone, ūllus, -a, -um, gen. ūllius, dat. ūllī, adj. as mas. noun, 1. and 2.

anything, see anyone.

anxiety, metus, -ūs, 4. m.

approach, aditus, -ūs, 4. M.

approve,  $prob\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a.

are, see am.

April, Aprīlis, -e, m. adj. as noun, 3.

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -ī, 2. m. arm, armō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

arm, armant, 1. v. a.

armed (are), armantur, 1. v. p.

armed (is), armātur, 1. v. p.

arms, armat, 1. v. a.

arms, arma, -ōrum, pl., 2. N.

army (in training), exercitus, -ūs, 4. M.

army (on the march), agmen, agminis, 3. N.

arrange, īnstruō, -strūxī, -structum, -struere, 3. v. a.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, 4. M.

arrive, perveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, -venīre, 4. v. n.

Arverni, Arverni, -ōrum, pl., 2. M.

as, mark of apposition, untranslated.

as, see for.

as ... as possible, quam with sup. as if, velut  $s\bar{i}$ , conj.

as ... so, ut ... ita, conj.

ascend, ascendō, -cendō, -cēnsum, -cendere, 3. v. a. and n.

ask,  $rog\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a. and n.

ask (as a right), flāgitō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

assist, iuvō, iūvī, iūtum, iuvāre, 1. v. a. assist, iuvant, 1. v. a.

assisted (are), iuvantur, 1. v. p.

assisted (is), iuvātur, 1. v. p.

assists, iuvat, 1. v. a.

assistance, auxilium, -ī, 2. N.

at length, tandem, adv.

attack, impetus, -ūs, 4. M.

attempt, temptō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

Aulus, Aulus, -ī, 2. M.

authority, auctoritās, -tātis, 3. f.

auxiliary forces, auxilia, -ōrum, pl., 2. N.

auxiliaries, see auxiliary forces.

Avaricum, Avaricum, -ī, 2. N.

avoid,  $v\bar{\imath}t\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a. away (to be), absum,  $-fu\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-fut\bar{u}rus$ ,

-esse, irr. v. n.

### B.

back, tergum, -ī, 2. N.

bad, malus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.; comp., pēior; superl., pessimus.

baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, pl., 2. N.

band, manus, -ūs, 4. F.

barbarians, barbarī, -ōrum, pl., 2. m. battle, proelium, -ī, 2. n.

be, see am.

be able, possum, potuī, posse, irr. v. n. because, quod, conj.

because of, abl. with or without a prep.

become, fīō, fierī, factus, pass. of faciō.

become masters of, potior, potitus, potīrī, 4. v. dep.

before, antequam, priusquam, conjs. before, ante, prep. with acc.

behoove, oportet, -uit, —, -ēre, 2. v. impers.

Belgae, Belgae, -ārum, pl., 1. m. believe, exīstimō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. and n.

Bellovaci, Bellovaci, -ōrum, pl., 2. m. best, optimus, -a, -um, 1. and 2., sup. of bonus.

best, optimē, adv., sup. of bene. betake themselves, recipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, -cipere, with reflex. pron., 3. v. a.

better, melior, -us, 3. adj., comp. of bonus.

better, melius, adv., comp. of bene. better (is), praestō, -stitī, -stātum, -stāre, 1. v. a. and n. impers. between, inter, prep. with acc. beyond, praeter, prep. with acc.

bind, teneō, tenuī, tentum, tenēre, 2. v. a.

bitter, see active. blot out,  $d\bar{e}p\bar{o}n\bar{o}$ , -posu $\bar{i}$ , -positum, -p $\bar{o}$ nere, 3. v. a.

boat, scapha, -ae, 1. F.

body, corpus, -oris, 3. N.

Boii, Boii, -ōrum, pl., 2. M.

boldly, audācter, adv.

boldness, audācia, -ae, 1. F.

both, see and.

bound, teneō, tenuī, tentum, tenēre, 2. v. a.

boundary, finis, -is, 3. M.

boy, puer, -erī, 2. m.

brave, fortis, -e, 3. adj.

bravely, fortiter, adv.

bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, 3. F.

break forth, ērumpō, -rūpī, -ruptum, -rumpere, 3. v. a. and n.

bridge, pontis, 3. M.

bring, ferō, tulī, lātum, ferre, irr. v. a.

bring together, comportō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

bring upon, *înferō*, -tulī, -lātum, -ferre, irr. v. a.

Britain, Britannia, -ae, 1. F.

brother, frāter, -tris, 3. m.

Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, 2. m.

building, aedificium, -ī, 2. N.

burn, incendō, -cendī, -cēnsum, -cendere, 3. v. a.

burn, cremō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. burst out, ērumpō, -rūpī, -ruptum, -rumpere, 3. v. n.

but, at, sed, coor. conj. but that, quin, rel. conj.

by, ab ( $\bar{a}$ , abs), prep. with abl.

#### C.

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, 3. m. call, appellō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

call away, revocō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

call together, convocō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

camp, castra, -ōrum, pl., 2. N.

can, possum, potuī, posse, irr. v. n.

captive, captīvus, -ī, 2. m.

capture, see take.

capture (by storming), expūgnō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

care, cūra, -ae, 1. F.

care, opera, -ae, 1. F.

careful, cautus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

carefully, diligenter, adv.

carry, ferö, tulī, lātum, ferre, irr. v. a. and n.

carry on, gerō, gessī, gestum, gerere, 3. v. a.

cart, carrus, -ī, 2. m., also carrum, -ī, 2. n.

Cassius (of), Cassiānus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

Cassius, Cassius, -ī, 2. M.

Casticus, Casticus, -ī, 2. M.

cause, causa, -ae, 1. F.

cavalry, equitatus, -ūs, 4. M.

cavalry, equites, -um, pl., 3. M.; see horseman.

cease, finem facere; see facio. Celts, Celtae, -ārum, pl., 1. M.

censure, see accuse.

centurion, centurio, -onis, 3. M.

certain, certus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

chain, catēna, -ae, 1. F.

charge of (to be in), praesum, -fuī, —, -esse, irr. v. n. (with dat.).

chariot, currus, -ūs, 4. m.

chief, prīnceps, -ipis, 3. m.

chief command, potentātus, -ūs, 4. m.

children, līberī, -ōrum, pl., 2. m. choose, dēligō, -lēgī, -lēctum, -ligere,

3. v. a. choose, capiō, cēpī, captum, capere,

3. v. a. Cicero, *Cicero*, -onis, 3. m.

circle, orbis, -is, 3. m.

circumstance, rēs, reī, 5. F.

citizen, cīvis, -is, 3. c.

city, urbs, urbis, 3. F.

civilization, cultus, -ūs, 4. m.

class, genus, generis, 3. N.

Claudius, Claudius, -ī, 2. M.

cohort, cohors, -hortis, 3. F.

cold, frīgus, frīgoris, 3. N.

collect, see locate.

column, agmen, -minis, 3. N.

come, veniō, vēnī, ventūrus, venīre, 4. v. n.

coming, see approach.

command, imperō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre,

1. v. a. and n. commanded (it is), imperor, -ātum,

 $-\bar{a}r\bar{i}$ , pass. of  $imper\bar{o}$ , used impers., 1. v. p.

commander, praefectus, -ī, 2. m. commander (in chief), imperātor,

-ōris, 3. m.

common, commūnis, -e, 3. adj.

common people, vulgus, -ī, 2. N.

commonwealth, rēs publica, reī publicae, F.

companion, comes, -itis, 3. c.

company (of soldiers), ordō, -inis, 3. m.

company with (in), see with.

conceal, tegō, tēxī, tēctum, tegere, 3. v. a.

concede, concēdō, -cēssī, -cēssum, -cēdere, 3. v. a. and n.

concern (it concerns), intersum, fuī, futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n., also impers.

concerning,  $d\bar{e}$ , prep.

condemn, damnō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

confer, conloquor (colloquor), -locūtus, -loquī, 3. v. dep.

conference, colloquium (conloquium), -ī, 2. N.

conquer, superō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

conquer, vincō, vīcī, victum, vincere, 3. v. a. and n.

conscious, cōnscius, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

consent, consensus, -ūs, 4. m.

consider, dūcō, dūxī, dūctum, dūcere, 3. v. a.

Considius, Considius, -ī, 2. m.

conspiracy, coniūrātiö, -ōnis, 2. f. conspire, cōnspīrō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre,

1. v. n.

construct,  $perd\bar{u}c\bar{o}$ ,  $-d\bar{u}x\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-d\bar{u}ctus$ ,  $-d\bar{u}cere$ , 3. v. a.

consul, consul, -ulis, 3. M.

consulship, consulatus, -ūs, 4. m. contempt, contemptio, -ōnis, 3. F.

contend, contendo, -tendo, -tentum, -tendere, 3, v. n. continually, continenter, adv. control, imperium, -ī, 2. N. conversation, sermō, -ōnis, 3. M. Cotta, Cotta, -ae, 1. M. could, see can. council, concilium, -ī, 2. N. counsel, consilium, -ī, 2. N. countenance (expression of), voltus (vultus), -ūs, 4. M. country, loca, -ōrum, pl., 2. N. courage, virtūs, -tūtis, 3. F. course, modus, -ī, 2. m. cover, tegō, tēxī, tēctum, tegere, 3. v. a. cowardly, timidus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. crime, nefās, indecl., N. crime, facinus, -oris, 3. N. crops, frūmentum, -ī, 2. N. cross, trānseō, -īvī (-iī), -itum, -īre, irr. v. a. and n. custom, consuetūdo, -inis, 3. f. custom, mos, moris, 3. M. cut off, interclūdo, -clūsī, -clūsum, -clūdere, 3. v. a. cut to pieces, concīdō, -cīdī, -cīsum, -cīdere, 3. v. a.

#### D.

daily, cotīdiē, adv.
danger, perīculum, -ī, 2. N.
dare, audeō, ausus, audēre, 2. v.
semi-dep.
daring, audāx, -ācis, 3. adj.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, 1. F.
dawn, see daybreak.
day, diēs, diēī (di-ē'-ī), 5. M. (sometimes F.).
daybreak, prīma lūx, gen. prīmae lūcis, F.
death, mors, mortis, 3. F.
death (violent), nex, necis, 3. F.
decide, statuō, -uī, -ūtum, -uere, 3. v. a.

decorations, īnsīgnis, -e, 3. adj., N. pl. as noun. decree, dēcrētum, -ī, 2. N. deep, altus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adi. defeat, vinco, vīcī, victum, vincere, 3. v. a. and n. defend, defendo, -fendo, -fensum. -fendere, 3. v. a. definite, certus, -a, -um, 1, and 2, adi. delay, moror, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v. dep. delight, delecto, -avī, -atum, -are, 1. v. a. delight, dēlectant, 1. v. a. delighted (are), delectantur, 1. v. p. delighted (is), delectatur, 1. v. p. delights, dēlectat, 1. v. a. demand (earnestly), flagito, -avî, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. departure, discēssus, -ūs, 4. m.; profectio, -onis, 3. F. depth, altitūdo, -inis, 3. F. desert, meritum, -ī, 2. N. deserter, perfuga, -ae, 1. M. desire, studeo, -uī, —, -ēre, 2. v. n. (with dat.). desire, petō, petīvī, petītum, petere, 3. v. a. and n. desire, cupiditās, -tātis, 3. F. desirous, cupidus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. detain, dētineo, -tinuī, -tentum, -tinēre, 2. v. a. determine, constituo, -stitui, -stitutum, -stituere, 3. v. a. and n. devastate, populor, -ātus, -ārī, 1. ▼ dep. devastate, see lay waste. did, see do. difficult, difficilis, -e, 3. adj. difficulty, difficultās, -tātis, 3. F. difficulty (with), vix, adv. diligent, dīligēns, -entis, 3. adj. disaster, incommodum, -ī, 2. N.

disclose, ēnūntiō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre,

1. v. a.

disposition, see spirit. distant (to be), see away (to be). distant, longus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. distribute, mētior, mēnsus, mētīrī, 4. v. dep.

disturb, moveo, movi, motum, movere,

ditch, fossa, -ae, 1. F. Divico, Divico, -onis, 3. M. divide, partior, -ītus, -īrī, 4. v. dep. divided,  $d\bar{\imath}v\bar{\imath}sus$ , -a, -um, p.p. as adj. 1. and 2.

Divitiacus, Divitiacus, -ī, 2. M. do, untranslated, when used instead of the common form of the verb. See -ne, -num, and nonne.

do, agō, ēgī, āctum, agere, 3. v. a. do a favor, grātum facere.

do at once, repraesento, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

doubt, dubium, -ī, 2. N. doubt, dubitātiō, -onis, 3. F.

doubtful, dubius, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

draw, dūcō, dūxī, dūctum, dūcere, 3. v. a.

drive out, expello, -puli, -pulsum, -pellere, 3. v. a.

Dumnorix, Dumnorix, -igis, 3. M. duty, officium, -ī, 2. N. dwelling-place, sēdēs, -is, 3. F.

#### E.

each one, quisque, quae-, quid-(quod-), indef. pron. eagerly,  $cupid\bar{e}$ , adv. eagerness, cupiditās, -tātis, 3. F. earnestly demands, see demands. easily, facile, adv. easy, facilis, -e, 3. adj. eight, octō, card. num. adj. indecl. elect, creō, creāvī, creātum, creāre, 1. v. a.

embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, 3. F.

employ, ūtor, ūsus, ūtī, 3. v. dep. encourage, cohortor, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v.

encourage, confirmo, -avi, -atum, -are, 1. v. a.

encourage, confirmant, 1. v. a. encouraged (are), confirmantur, 1.

encouraged (is), confirmatur, 1. v. p. encourages, confirmat, 1. v. a.

end,  $f\bar{\imath}nis$ , -is, 3. M.

endeavor, conor, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v. dep. endure, fero, tuli, lātum, ferre, irr. v. a. and n.

enemy (in war), hostis, -is, 3. c. enemy (personal), inimīcus, -ī, 2. m. enfeeble, effēminō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

engagement continues, (it is fought), pass. of  $p\bar{u}gn\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. n.

engineer, faber, fabrī, 2. m. enormous, ingens, -entis, 3. adj. enroll, conscribo, -scripsi, -scriptum, -scrībere, 3. v. a.

entire, totus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. entreat,  $\bar{o}r\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a. and n.

equip, armō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. especially, māximē, adv.

even, etiam, conj.

even if, etsī, conj.

every, see all.

evident (is), consto, -stitī, -stātūrus, -stāre, 1. v. n. impers.

excel, praesto, -stiti, -stitum, -stare, 1. v. a. and n.

execute, administro, -avī, -atum, -are, 1. v. a.

exercise, ūtor, ūsus, ūtī, 3. v. dep. exhort, cohortor, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v. dep.

exile, exsul, -ulis, 3. c.

expect, spērō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. and n.

expression (of countenance), voltus (vultus), -ūs, 4. m.
extent, see magnitude.

extraordinary, incrēdibilis, -e, 3. adj. eye, oculus, -ī, 2. m.

#### F.

Fabius, Fabius, -ī, 2. m.

fact, see thing.

faction, factio, -onis, 3. F.

fair, aequus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

faithful, fidēlis, -e, 3. adj.

fall, cadō, cecidī, cāsūrus, cadere, 3. v. n.

fame, glōria, -ae, 1. F.

famine, famēs, -is, F.

far, longē, adv.

father, pater, -tris, 3. M.

favor, grātia, -ae, 1. F.

favor, faveō, fāvī, fautūrus, favēre, 2. v. n. (with dat.).

fear, vereor, -itus, -ērī, 2. v. dep.

fear, timor, -ōris, 3. m.

feeble, infirmus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

feelings, animus, -ī, 2. m.

fertile, frūmentārius, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

few, paucus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. field, ager, agrī, 2. m.

fifteen, quindecim, card. num. adj. indecl.

fifteen hundred, mille et quingenti. fight, pūgna, -ae, 1. F.

fight,  $p\bar{u}gn\bar{o}$ ,  $-\hat{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a.

fight (decisively), dīmicō, -āvī, -ātūrus, -āre, 1. v. n.

fire, īgnis, -is, 3. m.

first, primus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. sup.

fitting (is), oportet, -uit, —, -ēre, 2. v. impers.

five, quīnque, card. num. adj. indecl. five (at a time), quīnī, -ae, -a, pl., 1. and 2. dist. num. adj.

five hundred, quingenti, -ae, -a, pl., 1. and 2. card. num. adj.

flag, vexillum, -ī, 2. N.

flee, see fly.

fleet, clāssis, -is, 3. F.

fleet, see swift.

flight, fuga, -ae, 1. F.

flow, fluō, flūxī, fluxūrus, fluere, 3. v. n.

flow into,  $\bar{\imath}nflu\bar{\upsilon}$ , - $fl\bar{u}x\bar{\imath}$ , - $fl\bar{u}x\bar{u}rus$ , -fluere, 3. v. a.

fly, fugiō, fūgō, fugitūrus, fugere, 3. v. a. and n.

fodder, pābulum, -ī, 2. N.

follow, sequor, secūtus, sequī, 3. v. dep.

following day, see next day.

foot, pēs, pedis, 3. M.

foot of, infimus (imus), -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. sup.

foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, 3. M.; pl., infantry.

for, untranslated, dat. case.

for (the purpose of), see in order that.

for (the sake of), causā with gen. for, ob, prep.

foraging, pābulātiō, -ōnis, 3. F.

force, vīs, vīs, 3. f., irr.

forced (march), māximus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. sup.

forces, copiae, -arum, pl., 1. F.

ford, vadum, -ī, 2. N.

forest, silva, -ae, 1. F.

forget, oblīviscor, -lītus; -līviscī, 3. v. dep.

forgetful,  $obl\bar{\imath}tus$ , -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

form, see make.

former, prior, prius, 3. adj. comp. former, vetus, -eris, 3. adj.

fortification, mūnītio, -onis, 3. F.

fortify, mūniō, -īvī (-iì), -ītum, -īre, 4. v. a. and n. fortifying, mūnītiō, -ōnis, 3. f. fortress, castellum, -ī, 2. n. fortune, fortūna, -ae, 1. f. fought (it is), pūgnor, -ātus, -ārī, pass. of pūgnō, impers. 1. v. p. four, quattuor, card. num. adj. indecl. fourth, quartus, -a, -um, 1. and 2.

fourth, quartus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. ord. num. adj.

fraternal, frāternus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

frenzy, furor, -ōris, 3. m.

friend, amīcus, -ī, 2. м.

friendly, amīcus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

friendship, amīcitia, -ae, 1. F.

frighten, territō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

from, quōminus, (with subj.), conj. from (away from), ab (ā, abs), prep. with abl.

from (out of),  $ex(\bar{e})$ , prep. from every side, undique, adv.

front (front rank), prīmus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

frosts, frīgora, -um, 3. N. pl. of frīgus.

full, plēnus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

#### G

Gabinius, Gabinius, -\(\bar{\clip}\), 2. M. gate, porta, -ae, 1. F. gather grain, fr\(\bar{u}\)mentor, -t\(\bar{u}\)tus, -t\(\bar{u}\)r\(\bar{i}\), 1. v. dep. Galba, Galba, -ae, 1. M. Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. garrison, praesidium, -\(\bar{\clip}\), 2. N. Gaul, Gallia, -ae, 1. F. Gauls, Gall\(\bar{i}\), -\(\bar{o}\)rum, pl. 2. M.

generally, plērumque, adv.

Geneva, Genāva, -ae, 1. F.

gentleness, lēnitās, -tātis, 3. F. Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, pl. 2. M. Germany, Germania, -ae, 1. F. give, do, dedī, datum, dare, 1. v. a. give, dant, 1. v. a. given (are), dantur, 1. v. p. given (is), datur, 1. v. p. gives, dat, 1. v. a. give battle, see join battle. glad, laetus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. gladly, laetus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj., as English adv. glare, aciēs, -ēī, 5. F. glory, qloria, -ae, 1. F. go, eo, īvī (iī), itum, īre, irr. v. n. go forth, exeo, -īvī (-iī), -itum, -īre,

irr. v. n. go over, trānseō, -īvī (-iī), -itum, -īre, irr. v. a. and n.

go wrong, errō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n.

good, bonus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. government, imperia, -ōrum, pl. 2. n. grain, frūmentum, -ī, 2. n.

grant, see give. grant, concēdō, -cēssī, -cēssum, -cēdere, 3. v. a. and n.

great, māgnus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.; comp. māior, sup. māximus.

greater, māior, -us, 3. adj., comp. of māqnus.

greater (age), gravior, -us, 3. adj., comp. of gravis.

greatest, māximus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. sup.

greatly, see severely.
greatly, magnopere, adv.

guest, hospes, -itis, 3. M.

#### H.

had (aux.), pluperf. ind. or subj. Haedui, *Haeduī*, -ōrum, pl. 2. m. Haedui (of the), *Haeduus*, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. habit of (in the), imperf. tense.

hand, manus, -ūs, 4. F.

hang out, prōpōnō, -posuī, -positum, -pōnere, 3. v. a.

happens (it happens), accidit, -cidit, -, -cidere, 3. v. n.; fit, factum, fierī, pass. of faciō.

harass,  $vex\bar{v}$ ,  $-\bar{u}v\bar{i}$ ,  $-\bar{d}tum$ ,  $-\bar{u}re$ , 1. v. a. hard pressed,  $lab\bar{v}r\bar{u}ns$ , -antis, 3., pres. p. of  $lab\bar{v}r\bar{v}$ , as adj.

has (aux.), perf. ind.

hasten, contendō, -tendī, -tentum, -tendere, 3. v. 11.

hasten,  $proper\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. n.

have, habeō, habuī, habitum, habēre, 2. v. a. and n.

have (aux.), see has.

he (she, it), is (ea, id);  $h\bar{v}c$  (haec,  $h\bar{o}c$ ); ille (illa, illud); often untranslated.

hear,  $audi\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{i}v\bar{i}$ ,  $-\bar{i}tum$ ,  $-\bar{i}re$ , 4. v. a. height,  $altit\bar{u}d\bar{o}$ , -inis, 3. F.

helmet, galea, -ae, 1. F.

Helvetii (Helvetians), Helvētii, -ōrum, pl., 2. m.

hem in, contineo, -tinuo, -tentum, -tinere, 2. v. a.

her, see she.

herald, praeco, -onis, 3. m.

here (be), adsum, -fuī, -futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n.

hers, see his, poss. pron.

herself (her-, it-),  $su\bar{\imath}$ ,  $sib\bar{\imath}$ ,  $s\bar{e}$ , reflex. pron.

herself, see himself, intensive pron. high, altus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. higher places, superiora, -um, pl.,

highest, summus, -a, -um, 1. and

2. adj.

hill, collis, -is, 3. M.

him, see he.

himself (her-, it-), ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pron.

hinder, dēterreō, -terruī, -territum, -terrēre, 2. v. a.; impediō, -īvī, -ītum, -īre, 4. v. a.

his, suus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

his own (her, its), see his.

hither, citerior, -us, 3. adj. comp. (no positive).

hold, teneō, tenuī, tentum, tenēre, 2. v. a.

hold (against some one), obtineō, -tinuī, -tentum, -tinēre, 2. v. a.

home, see house.

honor, honor, -oris, 3. M.

hope, spēs, spei (spe'-i), 5. F.

hope,  $sp\bar{e}r\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a. and n.

horse, equus, -ī, 2. m.

horseman, eques, -itis, 3. m.

hostage, obses, -idis, 3. c.

hostile, see unfriendly.

house, domus,  $-\bar{\imath}$   $(-\bar{u}s)$ , 2. and 4. F.

how, quam, adv.

hundred, centum, card. num. adj. indecl.

hunger, famēs, -is, 3. F.

hurt, offendō, -fēndō, -fēnsum, -fendere, 3. v. a. and n.

#### I.

I, ego, pers. pron.

Ides, Īdūs, -uum, pl., 4. F.

if, sī, conj.

illustrious, clārus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

import, importō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

in, in, prep. with abl.

in (with names of towns and small islands), locative case.

in charge of (to be), praesum, -fuī, -futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n.

in company with, cum, prep. with abl.

in front of,  $pr\bar{o}$ , prep. with abl.

in order that, ut (uti), conj. in order to, see in order that. in regard to,  $d\bar{e}$ , prep. with abl. in the highest degree, māximē, adv. in three divisions, tripartītō, adv. infantry, see pedes. inferior, inferior, -us, 3. adj. comp. inflicted upon (be), sequor, secūtus, sequi, 3. v. dep. influence, auctoritas, -tatis, 3. F. influence, commoveo, -movi, -motum, -movēre, 2. v. a. influential, see powerful. inform, certiorem facere. inhabit, incolo, -colui, -, -colere, 3. v. a. and n. injury, iniūria, -ae, 1. F. insult, contumēlia, -ae, 1. F. intervene, intersum, -fuī, -futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n. into, in, prep. with acc. iron, ferrum, -ī, 2. N. is, see am. it, see he. Italy, Italia, -ae, 1. F. its, see his.

#### J.

itself, see himself, intens. or reflex.

join (join battle), commīttō, -mīsī, -mīssum, -mīttere, 3. v. a. journey, iter, itineris, 3. N. irr. joyful, laetus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. jump down, dēsilio, -siluī, -sultum, -silīre, 4. v. n. just,  $i\bar{u}stus$ , -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

justly, see rightly.

#### K.

keep, see hold. keep apart, distineo, -tinui, -tentum, -tinēre, 2. v. a.

keep from, prohibeo, -buī, -bitum, -bēre, 2. v. a. keep together, contineo, -tinui, -tentum, -tinēre, 2. v. a. kindness, clēmentia, -ae, 1. F. king, rēx, rēgis, 3. m. know, sciō, scīvī, scītum, scīre, 4. v. a. known, notus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

L., Lucius, -ī, 2. m.

labor, labor, -ōris, 3. m.

lacking (is), dēsum, -fuī, -futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n. lake, lacus, -ūs, 4. m. land, terra, -ae, 1. F. language, lingua, -ae, 1. F. large, see great. law, lēx, lēgis, 3. F. lay aside, dēpūnō, -posuī, -positum, -ponere, 3. v. a. lay down, pono, posui, positum, ponere, 3. v. a. lay waste, vasto, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. lay waste, vastant, 1. v. a. laid waste (are), vastantur, 1. v. p. laid waste (is), vastātur, 1. v. p. lays waste, vastat, 1. v. a. lead, dūcō, dūxī, dūctum, dūcere, 3. v. a. lead away, abdūcō, -dūxī, -dūctum, -dūcere, 3. v. a. lead out, ēdūcō, -dūxī, -dūctum, -dūcere, 3. v. a. lead over, trānsdūcō (trādūcō), -dūxī,  $-d\bar{u}ctum$ ,  $-d\bar{u}cere$ , 3. v. a. lead to,  $add\bar{u}c\bar{o}$ ,  $-d\bar{u}x\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-d\bar{u}ctum$ ,  $-d\bar{u}$ cere, 3. v. a. leader, dux, ducis, 3. M. leadership, prīncipātus, -ūs, 4. m. leading man, see chief. least, minimus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj., sup. of parvus.

leave, relinguo, -liqui, -lictum, -linquere, 3. v. a. led on, inductus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. left, sinister, -tra, -trum, 1. and 2. adi. legion, legio, -onis, 3. F. Lemannus, Lemannus, -i, 2. M. less, minor, -us, 3. adj., comp. of parvus. less, minus, -ōris, N. of comp. as noun, 3. lest, nē, conj. letter (of the alphabet), litera, -ae; pl., a letter, an epistle, 1. F. liberate, see set free. liberty, lībertās, -tātis, 3. F. lieutenant, see ambassador. life, vita, -ae, 1. F. light, lūx, lūcis, 3. F. like, similis, -e, 3. adj. limit, finis, -is, 3. M.; pl., territory. line (of battle), acies, aciei (aci-e'-i), 5. F. line (on the march), agmen, -inis, line,  $f \bar{\imath} nis$ , -is, 3. M. Liscus, Liscus, -ī, 3. m. little, see small. live, vīvo, vīxī, vīctum, vīvere, 3. v. n. load, onus, -eris, 3. N. locate, colloco (conloco), -avī, -atum, -āre, 1. v. a. Loire, Liger, -eris, 3. M. long time, diū, adv. lose, āmīttō, -mīsī, -mīssum, -mīttere, 3. v. a. loud, see great. love, amor, -oris, 3. M. lowest part of, see foot of. Lucius, Lucius, -ī, 2. m.

#### M.

magistracy, magistrātus, -ūs, 4. m. magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, 4. m. magnitude, māgnitūdō, -inis, 3. F. majesty, māiestās, -tātis, 3. F. make, facio, feci, factum, facere, make amends, satisfacio, -fecī, -factūrus, -facere, irr. v. n. (with dat.). make upon, see bring upon. make war, bello, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n. man, vir, virī, 2. M. man (human being), homo, -inis, 3. м. many, multus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. many (very), complūrēs, -plūra (-ia), pl. 3. adj. march, see journey. marriage, mātrimonium, -ī, 2. N. master, dominus, -ī, 2. M. may (aux.), pres. subj. me, see I. means (by . . . of), abl. case. meanwhile, interim, adv. measure, mētior, mēnsum, mētīrī, 4. v. dep. Mediterranean Sea, mare nostrum. memory, memoria, -ae, 1. F. message, nūntius, -ī, 2. M. messenger, nūntius, -ī, 2. m. Meuse, Mosa, -ae, 1. M. might (aux.), imp. subj. mile, mīlia passuum. military, militaris, -e, 3. adj. mind, see spirit. mine, see my. Minerva, Minerva, -ae, 1. F. mistaken (to be), see go wrong. money, pecūnia, -ae, 1. F. more, comparative degree. more, plūs, plūris, 3. n.; pl. as adj. more, magis, adv. more, amplius, N. indecl. more than, amplius with abl. morning (in the), mane, adv. most, plūrimus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

most, plūrimum, adv. mother, mater, -tris, 3. F. mountain, mons, montis, 3. M. move, moveo, movi, motum, movere, 2. v. a. much, multus, -a, -um, 1. and 2.

multitude, multitūdō, -inis, 3. F.

my, meus, mea, meum, 1. and 2. poss. pron.

#### N.

name, nomen, -inis, 3. N. name a day, diem dicere. Nantuates, Nantuātēs, -um, pl., 3. M. narrowness of passage, angustiae, -ārum, pl., 1. F.

nation, nātiō, -ōnis, 3. F.

native, nativus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

nature, nātūra, -ae, 1. F.

navigate, nāvigō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n.

near, prope, prep. with acc.; adv. near (with names of places), ad, prep. with acc.

nearer, propior, -us, 3. adj. comp. nearest, proximus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj., sup. of propior.

need, egeō, eguī, —, egēre, 2. v. n. with gen. or abl.

need, opus, operis, 3. N.

need of action, opus factū.

neglect, neglego, -lexī, -lectum, -legere, 3. v. a.

neither, neque, conj.

neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque, conj.

never, numquam (nunquam), adv. new, novus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. next, posterus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. next day, postrīdiē, adv.

next day after that, postrīdiē ēius diei.

no, see not any.

no one, nūllus, -a, -um, gen. nūllīus, dat. nūllī, adj. 1. and 2., m. as noun. no one, nēmō, -inis, 3. c.

nobility, nobilitas, -tatis, 3, F.

noble, nobilis, -is, adj. 3., M. as

nobleman, nobilis, -is, noun from adj., 3. m.

nobles, nobiles, 3. adj., M. pl. as noun.

not, non, adv.

not (with subj.), nē, adv.

not alone ... but also, non solum ... sed etiam, conj.

not any, nullus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

not at all, nihil, N. indecl., acc. as adv.

not even,  $n\bar{e} \dots quidem$ , conj.

not only ... but also, non modo ... sed etiam, conj.

now, nunc, adv.

number, numerus, -ī, 2. m.

number (great), see multitude.

O, exclamation,  $\bar{o}$ .

obey, pāreō, pāruī, pāritūrus, pārēre, 2. v. n. (with dat.).

obstruct, impedio, -dīvī, -dītum, -dīre, 4. v. a.

obtain, obtineo, -tinui, -tentum, -tinere, 2. v. a.

obtain control (possession) of, potior, potītus, potīrī, 4. v. dep.

occupy, occupō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

of, translated usually by gen.

of a father, patrius, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

often, saepe, adv.

oh,  $\bar{o}$ , interj.

old, senex, senis; 3. M. older, senior, -us, 3. adj. comp. old man, see old.

on, in, prep. with abl.; abl. case.

on, ex, prep.

on account of, ob, propter, preps.

on this account, ob, prep. with

one, ūnus, ūna, ūnum, 1. and 2. card. num. adj.

one another, alius . . . alius, 1. and 2. adj. pron.

one (the one... the other), alter ... alter, 1. and 2. adj. pron.

one by one, singulī, -ae, -a, pl. dist. num. adj. 1. and 2.

only, solus, -a, -um; ūnus, ūna, ūnum, adjs. 1. and 2.

open, patēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj. 3.

opportunity, facultās, -tātis, 3. F.

oration, orātio, -onis, 3. F.

orator, ōrātor, -ōris, 3. m.

order, imperō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

order, see line.

order, imperium, -ī, 2. N.

Orgetorix, Orgetorix, -igis, 3. m.

other (another), alius, alia, aliud, 1. and 2. pron.

other (the other), alter, -era, -erum, 1. and 2. adj. pron.

others (some ... others), aliī ... aliī, 1. and 2. adj. pron.

our, noster, -tra, -trum, 1. and 2. poss. pron.

ours, see our.

over, trāns, prep. with acc.

overcome, see conquer.

over, dative case, see Dumnorigī, Ex. 195, sentence 7.

overpower, superõ, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

overtake, consector, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v. dep.

own, see his own. owner, see master.

P.

pace, passus, -ūs, 4. m.

palisade, vallum, -ī, 2. N.

pardon, condōnō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

part, pars, partis, 3. F.

party, see faction.

pass the winter, hiemō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n.

passage, iter, itineris, 3. N.

past (the), praeterita, N. pl. of adj. as noun, 2.

peace, pāx, pācis, 3. F.

people, populus, -ï, 2. m.

peril, see danger.

perish, pereō, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, -īre, irr. v. n.

permitted (it is), licet, licuit (licitum est), licēre, impers., 2. v. n.

persuade, persuādeō, -suāsī, -suāsum, -suādēre, 2. v. a. and n.

phalanx, phalanx, -angis, 3. F.

Piso, Pīsō, -ōnis, 3. M.

pitch, see place.

place, pōnō, posuī, positum, pōnere, 3. v. a.

place, locus, -ī, 2. M., pl. loca, N. place in charge of, see put in charge of.

place of (in),  $pr\bar{o}$ , prep. with abl. plan, see *counsel*.

pleasant, facilis with the latter supine of videō.

plenty, copia, -ae, 1. F.

plunder, praedor, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v. dep.

point out, dēmonstro, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

populace, plēbs, plēbis, 3. F.

popularity, grātia, -ae, 1. F.

possess, obtineō, -tinuī, -tentum, -tinēre, 2. v. a.

possession, possessiō, -ōnis, 3. F. possible, see as . . . as possible.

postpone, confero, -tuli, -latum, -ferre, irr. v. a. power (civil), potestās, -tātis, 3. F. power (military), imperium, -ī, 2. N. powerful, potēns, -entis, 3. adj. praise, laudo, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. praise, laudant, 1. v. a. praise, laus, laudis, 3. F. praised (are), laudantur, 1. v. p. praised (is), laudātur, 1. v. p. praises, laudat, 1. v. a. pray, tandem, adv. prefer, mālō, māluī, —, mālle, irr. v. prepare, paro, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. rampart, vallum, -ī, 2. N. prepare, parant, 1. v. a. prepared (are), parantur, 1. v. p. prepared (is), parātur, 1. v. p. prepared, parātus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. prepares, parat, 1. v. a. present (to be), adsum, -fuī, -futūrus, -esse, irr. 1. v. n. present, praesēns, -entis, 3. adj. prisoner, see captive. private, privātus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. proconsul, prōcōnsul, -ulis, 3. M. property, sua, suōrum, pl., 2. N., see his; rēs, reī, 5. F. protect, servo, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. protect, servant, 1. v. a. protected (are), servantur, 1. v. p. protected (is), servātur, 1. v. p. protects, servat, 1. v. a.

protection, see garrison.

adj.

dep.

provided (that), dummodo, conj.

public, publicus, -a, -um, 1. and 2.

purchase, redimō, -ēmī, -emptum,

pursue, consector, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v.

province, provincia, -ae, 1. F.

punishment, poena, -ae, 1. F.

-imere, 3. v. a.

put in charge of, praeficio, -fecī, -fectum, -ficere, 3. v. a. (with dat,). put on, accommodo, -avī, -atum, -are, 1. v. a. put to death, interficio, -fecī, -fectum, -ficere, 3. v. a.

#### Q.

quickly, celeriter, adv. quite, adv., superlative degree.

#### R.

rank (of soldiers), ordo, -inis, 3. m.; agmen, -inis, 3. N. rapid, see swift. rations, frūmentum, -ī, 2. N. reach, pervenio, -venī, -ventum, -venīre, 4. v. 11. ready, see prepared. rear rank, novissimum agmen, 3. N. reason (for this), causā with gen.; hōc. rebuke, accūsō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. receive, accipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, -cipere, 3. v. a. recent, recens, -ntis, 3. adj. recover, recipio, -cepī, -ceptum, -cipere, with reflex., 3. v. a. re-enforcements, subsidium, -ī, 2. N. refrain, tempero, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. regard, see have. region, regio, -onis, 3. F. rejoice, gaudeo, gavisus, gaudere, 2. semi-dep. relationship, adfinitās, -tātis, 3. F. remain, maneo, mansī, mānsūrus,

manēre, 2. v. n.; supersum, -fui,

remain, remaneō, -mānsī, -mānsūrus,

-futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n.

-manēre, 2. v. n.

remaining, reliquus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

remove, removeō, -mōvī, -mōtum, -movēre. 2. v. a.

renew, renovō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. repent, paenitet, -nituit, -tēre, 2. v. a. impers.

reply, respondeo, -spondo, -sponsum, -spondere, 2. v. n.

represent, prōpōnō, -posuī, -positum, -pōnere, 3. v. a.

republic, rēspublica, reīρublicae, 5. and 1. F.

repulse, pellō, pepulī, pulsum, pellere, 3. v. a.

request, petō, petīvī, petītum, petere, 3. v. a. and n.

request (at my, thy, etc.),  $m\bar{e}$  petente, see seek.

respond, respondeo, -spondi, -sponsum, -spondere, 2. v. n.

rest of, see remaining.

restrain, see keep together.

retreat,  $s\bar{e}$  ( $m\bar{e}$ ,  $t\bar{e}$ , etc.), recipere, 3. v. a.

return, revertō, -vertī, -versum, -vertere, 3. v. n.

reveal, ēnūntiō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. revenues, vectīgalia, -ium, pl., 3. n. revolution, rēs novae, rērum novārum. F.

reward, mercēs, -ēdis, 3. F.

Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, 2. m.

Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, 2. M.

ridge, iugum, -ī, 2. N.

right, dexter, -era, -erum, and -tra, -trum, 1. and 2. adj.

right, iūs, iūris, 3. N.

rightly, iure, adv.

ripe, matūrus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

rival, inimīcus, -ī, 2. m.

river, flumen, -inis, 3. N.

road, iter, itineris, 3. N.

robber, latro, -onis, 3. M.

Roman,  $R\bar{o}m\bar{a}nus$ , -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

Rome,  $R\bar{o}ma$ , -ae, 1. F.

routes, itinera, -um, 3. N., pl. of iter. rugged, arduus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

rule, regō, rēxī, rēctum, regere, 3. v. a. rumor, rūmor, -ōris, 3. m.

#### S.

safe, tūtus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. safety, salūs, -ūtis, 3. F.

sailor, nauta, -ae, 1. M.

sake, causa, -ae, 1. F.

same, *īdem*, *eadem*, *idem*, dem. adj. pron.

Santones, Santonēs, -ūm (-ī, -ōrum), pl., 3. m.

Saône, Arar, Araris, 3. M.

satisfy, satisfaciō, -fēcī, -factūrus, -facere, 3. v. n. (with dat.).

said (it is), dīcor, dictus, dīcī, pass. of dīcō, used impers., 3. v. p.

say, dīcō, dīxī, dictum, dīcere, 3. v. a. and n.

say . . . not, negō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. and n.

scarcity, inopia, -ae, 1. F.

scout, explorator, -oris, 3. M.

sea, mare, maris, 3. N.

season, see time.

secure, potior, -ītus, -īrī, 4. v. dep. see, videō, vīdī, vīsum, vidēre, 2. v. a. seek, petō, petīvī, petītum, petere, 3. v. a. and n.

seeking to gain, appetēns, -entis, 3. adj.

seem, videor, vīsus, vidērī, pass. of videō.

seize, occupō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. select, dēligō, -lēgī, -lectum, -ligere,

senate, senātus, -ūs, 4. m. senator, senātor, -ōris, 3. m.

send, mīttō, mīsī, mīssum, mīttere, 3.

send forward, praemāttō, -mīsī, -mīssum, -mīttere, 3. v. a.

separate, dividō, -vīsī, -vīsum, -videre, 3. v. a.

separated,  $d\bar{\imath}v\bar{\imath}sus$ , -a, -um, p.p. as adj. 1. and 2.

Sequani, Sēquanī, -ōrum, pl., 2. N. servant (soldiers'), cālō, -ōnis, 3. M. service, see assistance.

servitude, servitūs, -tūtis, 3. F.

set free,  $l\bar{\imath}ber\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a.

set on fire, incendō, -cendī, -cēnsum, -cendere, 1. v. a.

settle, consido, -sēdi, -sēssūrus, -sidere, 3. v. n.

several, aliquot, pron. indecl.

severe, dūrus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. severely, vehementer, adv.

severely, graviter, adv.

severity, see strictness.

shall (aux.), fut. ind., and future imperative.

shall have (aux.), fut. perf. ind. she, see he.

ship, nāvis, -is, 3. F.

shore, lītus, -oris, 3. N.

should (aux.), pres. subj.

shout together, conclāmō, -āvi, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n.

show,  $d\bar{e}m\bar{o}nstr\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a.

show, dēmonstrant, 1. v. a.

shown (are), dēmonstrantur, 1. v. p.

shown (is), dēmonstrātur, 1. v. p.

shows, dēmonstrat, 1. v. a.

shudder, horreō, horrui, —, horrēre, 2. v. a. and n.

sight, conspectus, -ūs, 4. m.

signal, sīgnum, -ī, 2. N.

silence, silentium, -ī, 2. N.

silent, taceō, tacuī, tacitum, tacēre, 2. v. a. and n.

since, cum, conj. (with subj.).

single, singulī, -ae, -a, pl. 1. and 2. dist. num. adj.

sister, soror, sororis, 3. F.

six, sex, card. num. adj. indecl.

six (each),  $s\bar{e}n\bar{i}$ , -ae, -a, pl. 1. and 2. dist. num. adj.

six hundred, sexcentī, -ae, -a, pl. 1. and 2. card. num. adj.

sixteen, sēdecim, card. num. adj. indecl.

skilful, peritus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

slaughter, caedēs, -is, 3. F.

slave, servus, -ī, 2. m.

slave (be a), serviō, -ii (-īvi), -ītūrus, -īre, 4. v. n.

slay, interficio, -fecī, -fectum, -ficere, 3. v. a.

small, parvus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.; comp. minor; sup. minimus.

snow, nix, nivis, 3. F.

so, ita, sic, tam, advs.

so as to, ut (utī), sub. conj.

so great, tantus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. soldier, mīles, -itis, 3. m.

some, aliquis (-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron.

some (some . . . others), alii . . . alii, pl. 1. and 2. adj.

some,  $n\bar{o}n\bar{u}llus$ , -a, -um, M. adj. as noun, 1. and 2.

son, filius, -i, 2. M.

sovereignty, see throne.

sow, faciō, with sēmentīs.

sowing (a), sēmentis, -is, 3. F.

space, spatium, -i, 2. N.

space of three days, triduum, -i, 2. N.

spare, cōnservō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

spend the winter, hiemō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n.

spirit, animus, -ī, 2. m.

spirit (with), see severely.

spring up, innāscor, -nātus, -nāscī, 3. v. dep. stand, cōnsistō, -stitī, —, -sistere, 3.

v. n.

starvation, famēs, -is, 3. F.

state, cīvitās, -tātis, 3. F.

station, dispōnō, -posuī, -positum, -ponere, 3. v. a.

stature, māgnitūdō corporis.

still, tamen, adv.

stop, dēsistō, -stitī, -stitūrus, -sistere, 3. v. n.

storm, tempestās, -tātis, 3. F.

storm, oppūgnō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

strength, vīrēs, -ium, pl., 3. F.

strengthen, cōnfirmō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

strictness, sevēritās, -tātis, 3. F.

stronghold, oppidum, -ī, 2. N.

struggle, labōrō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. n.

subdue,  $p\bar{a}c\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{i}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a. successive, continuus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

successive, continens, -entis, 3. adj. suddenly, subite, abl. as adv.

Suessiones, Suessiones, -um, pl., 3. m. sufficient, satis with gen., adv.

sufficiently, satis, adv.

suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

Sulla, Sulla, -ae, 1. M.

summit of, see top of.

summon,  $voc\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a. summon, vocant, 1. v. a.

summoned (are), vocantur, 1. v. p. summoned (is), vocātur, 1. v. p.

summoned (18), total it, 1. summons, vocat, 1. v. a.

superior, superior, -us, 3. adj. comp. suppliant, supplex, -icis, 3. c.

supplies, commeātus, -ūs, 4. m.

supply, see plenty.

supreme, suprēmus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. sup.

z. adj. sup.

surround, circumveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, -venīre, 4. v. a.

survive, supersum, -fuī, -futūrus, -esse, irr. v. n.

suspicion, suspīcio, -onis, 3. F.

sustain, sustineō, -tinuī, -tentum, -tinēre, 2. v. a. and n.

swift, celer, -eris, -ere, 3. adj.

swiftly, celeriter, adv.

sword, ferrum, -ī, 2. N.

#### T.

take, capiō, cēpī, captum, capere, 3. v. a.

take a stand, see stand.

take away, tollō, sustulī, sublātum, tollere, 3. v. a.

take care, do with opera.

take care to, cūra ut.

take position, cōnsistō, -stitī, —, -sistere, 3. v. n.

take possession of, occupō-, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a.

task, labor, -oris, 3. m.

tend, pertineō, -tinuī, —, -tinēre, 2. v. n.

tenth, decimus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. ord. num. adj.

terrify, terreō, terruī, territum, terrēre, 2. v. a.

territory,  $f\bar{\imath}n\bar{e}s$ , -ium, 3. m., pl. of  $f\bar{\imath}nis$ .

than, quam, adv.

that, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud, dem. prons.

that, see who, rel. pron.

that (in order that), ut, sub. conj. that (in order that), quō, rel. adv.

that (of yours), iste, ista, istud, dem. pron.

that not,  $n\bar{e}$ , conj. (with subj.). the, untranslated.

their, see his, etc.

them, see they.

themselves, see himself, etc. then, tum, adv. there,  $ib\bar{i}$ , adv. there (there is, etc.), untranslated. these, pl. of this. they, pl. of he, she, it. thing, res, rei, 5. F. thing which, id quod or quae res. think, exīstimō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. think, puto, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. third, tertius, -a, -um, 1. and 2. ord. num. adj. this,  $h\bar{i}c$ , haec,  $h\bar{o}c$ ; sometimes is, ea, id, dem. pron. this side of, citrā, prep. with acc. those, pl. of that. thousand, mille, indecl. card. num. adj. and noun, N. thousand, mīlia, -ium, pl., 3. N. three, trēs, tria, 3. card. num. adj. three days (space of), triduum, -i, 2. N. throne, regnum,  $-\bar{\imath}$ , 2. N. through, per, prep. with acc. throw, conicio, -ieci, -iectum, -icere, 3. v. a. thus, see so. time, tempus, -oris, 3. N. to (place to which), ad, prep. with acc. to, dat. case. top of, summus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. towards, in, prep. with acc. towards, ad, prep. with acc. tower, turris, -is, 3. F. town (walled), oppidum, -ī, 2. N. transport,  $tr\bar{a}nsport\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a. treacherously, per īnsidiās. treachery, īnsidiae, -ārum, pl., 1. F. treachery, perfidia, -ae, 1. F. treason, proditio, -onis, 3. F.

treat, see have.

treaty, foedus, -eris, 3. N. tree, arbor, -oris, 3. F. trench, fossa, -ae, 1. F. Treveri, Trēverī, -ōrum, pl., 2. M. tribune, tribūnus, -ī, 2. M. tribute, vectīgal, -ālis, 3. N. troops, copiae, -arum, F., pl. of copia. trumpet, tuba, -ae, 1. F. try, experior, -pertus, -perīrī, 4. v. dep. try, tempto, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. turn, verto, verti, versum, vertere, 3. v. a. turn (this way and that), verso,  $-\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-\bar{a}tum$ ,  $-\bar{a}re$ , 1. v. a. turn and flee, verto with tergum. twelve, duodecim, card. num. adj. indecl. two, duo, duae, duo, card. num. adj. U. Ubii, Ubiī, -ōrum, pl., 2. m. unaccustomed, insuetus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. under arms, in armīs. undertaking, rēs, reī, 5. F. unfavorable, alienus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. unfortunate, miser, -era, -erum, 1. and 2. adj. unfriendly, inimīcus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. unjustly, iniuste, adv. unknown, īgnōtus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. unless, nisi, conj. unserviceable, inūtilis, -e, 3. adj. until, dum, conj. unwilling (be), nolo, nolui, —, nolle, irr. v. a. and n. unwilling, invītus, -a, -um, 1. and 2.

unworthy of, indignus, -a, -um, 1.

and 2. adj. (with abl.).

upbraid, incūsō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. upon, in, prep. with abl. use, ūsus, ūsūs, 4. m. use, ūtor, ūsus, ūtī, 3. v. dep. used to, imp. ind.

useful, ūtilis, -e, 3. adj.

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, 3. F.

#### V.

Vergobretus, Vergobretus, -ī, 2. m. very, māximē, adv., or the sup. degree. very easy, perfacilis, -e, 3. adj. very few, perpaucī, -ae, -a, pl., 1. and 2. adj. very many, complūrēs, -plūra (-plūria), 3. adj. very much, māgnopere (māgnō opere), adv. very much like, consimilis, -e, 3. adi. Vesontio, Vesontio, -onis, 3. F. veteran, veterānus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. vicinity, propinquitās, -tātis, 3. F. vicinity of, ad. victor, victor, -oris, 3. M. victorious, see victor. victory, victoria, -ae, 1. F.

visit, adeo, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, -īre, irr.

village, vīcus, -ī, 2. M.

violent, see active.

force.

virtūs.

v. a. and n. voice,  $v\bar{o}x$ ,  $v\bar{o}cis$ , 3. F.

#### W.

violence, iniūria, -ae, 1. F.; see also

virtues, virtūtēs, -um, 3. F., pl. of

wage, see carry on. wagon, carrus, -ī, 2. м. wait, exspectō (expectō), -āvī, -ātum, -āre, 1. v. a. and n. wall, mūrus, -ī, 2. m.

want,  $vol\bar{o}$ ,  $volu\bar{a}$ , velle, irr. v. a. and n.

war, bellum, -ī, 2. N.

warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

warn, moneō, monuī, monitum, monēre, 2. v. a.

wave, fluctus, -ūs, 4. M.

way, via, -ae, 1. F.; iter, itineris, 3. N. we, see I.

wearied,  $d\bar{e}fessus$ , -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

well, bene, adv.

well-known,  $n\bar{o}tus$ , -a, -um, 1, and 2. adj.

were, imp. ind. or subj. were in the habit of, imp. ind.

were wont to, imp. ind.

what, see who, interrog. or rel. when,  $ub\bar{i}$ , cum, conjs.

where, ubi, conj.

whether, sī, conj.

which, see who, interrog. or rel. pron.

while, dum, conj.

whither, quō, conj.

who (what, which, that), quī, quae, quod, rel. pron.

who (what, which), quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), interrog. pron. whole, tōtus, -a, -um, 1. and 2.

adj. whom, see who.

why, cūr, quāre, advs.

wicked, improbus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj.

wife, uxor, -ōris, 3. F.

will (aux.), fut. ind.

will have (aux.), fut. perf. ind.

willing (be), volō, voluī, velle, irr. v. a. and n.

wing,  $corn\bar{u}$ ,  $-\bar{u}s$  ( $-\bar{u}$ ), 4. N.

winter, hibernus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. winter quarters, hiberna, -orum, pl., wish, volo, volui, velle, irr. v. a. and n. with, cum, prep. with abl. within (of time), abl. within, intrā, prep. with acc. without, sine, prep. with abl. with spirit, see actively. witness, testis, -is, 3. c. woman, fēmina, -ae, 1. F. wonder at, mīror, -ātus, -ārī, 1. v. dep. wont (to be), imperfect tense. work, opera, -ae, 1. F. world, orbis terrae (terrārum). worse, pēior, -us, 3. adj., comp. of malus. worst, pessimus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj., sup. of malus. worthy of, dignus, -a, -um, 1. and 2. adj. (with abl.).

would, pres. subj.

would have, perf. subj.
wound, volnus (vulnus), -eris, 3. N.
wounded, saucius, -a, -um, 1. and 2.
adj.
wretched, see unfortunate.

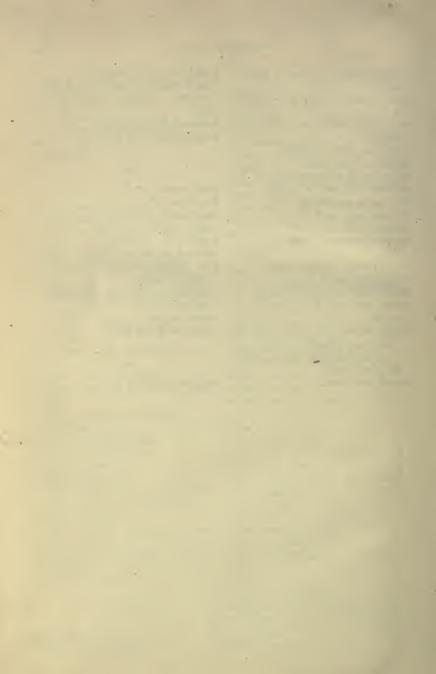
#### Y.

wrong, iniūria, -ae, 1. F.

year, annus, -i, 2. M.
yet, tamen, adv.
you, tū, gen. tuī, pers. pron.
young, iuvenis, -e, 3. adj.
young man, see young.
younger, iunior, -ius, 3. adj.
your (sing.), tuus, tua, tuum, poss.
pron. 1. and 2.
your (pl.), vester, -tra, -trum, poss.
pron. 1. and 2.
yours, see your.
youth, see young man.

Z.

zeal, studium, -ī, 2. N.





# RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

# LOAN DEPT.

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

	15 Jan'64927
1	
	REC'D LD
	JAN /
	JAN 6 '64-12 AM
-	
1	
LD 21 4	
(D647)	40m-4,'63 10)476B General Library
-	General Library  University of California  Berkeley

- YC 51725

